ARMv6-M Architecture Reference Manual

ARM®

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
ARM DDI 0419C (ID092410)

ARMv6-M Architecture Reference Manual

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.

Release Information

The following changes have been made to this document.

Change History

Date	Issue	Confidentiality	Change
March 2007	A	Non-Confidential	First release
September 2008	B	Non-Confidential, Restricted Access	Additions to the System Control Block, power management support, corrections to errata and clarifications
September 2010	C	Non-confidential	Additions to describe the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension and the *Protected Memory System Architecture* (PMSA) Extension. Also extensive clarification and reorganization.

Proprietary Notice

This ARM Architecture Reference Manual is protected by copyright and the practice or implementation of the information herein may be protected by one or more patents or pending applications. No part of this ARM Architecture Reference Manual may be reproduced in any form by any means without the express prior written permission of ARM. **No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise to any intellectual property rights is granted by this ARM Architecture Reference Manual**.

Your access to the information in this ARM Architecture Reference Manual is conditional upon your acceptance that you will not use or permit others to use the information for the purposes of determining whether implementations of the ARM architecture infringe any third party patents.

This ARM Architecture Reference Manual is provided “as is”. ARM makes no representations or warranties, either express or implied, included but not limited to, warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose, or non-infringement, that the content of this ARM Architecture Reference Manual is suitable for any particular purpose or that any practice or implementation of the contents of the ARM Architecture Reference Manual will not infringe any third party patents, copyrights, trade secrets, or other rights.

This ARM Architecture Reference Manual may include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors.

To the extent not prohibited by law, in no event will ARM be liable for any damages, including without limitation any direct loss, lost revenue, lost profits or data, special, indirect, consequential, incidental or punitive damages, however caused and regardless of the theory of liability, arising out of or related to any furnishing, practicing, modifying or any use of this ARM Architecture Reference Manual, even if ARM has been advised of the possibility of such damages.

Words and logos marked with ® or TM are registered trademarks or trademarks of ARM Limited, except as otherwise stated below in this proprietary notice. Other brands and names mentioned herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited

110 Fulbourn Road Cambridge, England CB1 9NJ

Restricted Rights Legend: Use, duplication or disclosure by the United States Government is subject to the restrictions set forth in DFARS 252.227-7013 (c)(1)(ii) and FAR 52.227-19.

This document is Non-Confidential but any disclosure by you is subject to you providing notice to and the acceptance by the recipient of, the conditions set out above.

In this document, where the term ARM is used to refer to the company it means “ARM or any of its subsidiaries as appropriate”.

Note

The term ARM is also used to refer to versions of the ARM architecture, for example ARMv6 refers to version 6 of the ARM architecture. The context makes it clear when the term is used in this way.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Contents
ARMv6-M Architecture Reference Manual

Preface
About this manual xvi
Using this manual xvii
Conventions xix
Additional reading xx
Feedback xxi

Part A Application Level Architecture

Chapter A1 Introduction
A1.1 About the ARM architecture profiles A1-26
A1.2 Privileged and unprivileged execution A1-27

Chapter A2 Application Level Programmers' Model
A2.1 About the application level programmers' model A2-30
A2.2 ARM processor data types and arithmetic A2-31
A2.3 Registers and execution state A2-36
A2.4 Exceptions, faults and interrupts A2-39
A2.5 Coprocessor support A2-40

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Chapter A3 ARM Architecture Memory Model
A3.1 Address space A3-42
A3.2 Alignment support A3-43
A3.3 Endian support A3-44
A3.4 Synchronization and semaphores A3-47
A3.5 Memory types and attributes and the memory order model A3-48
A3.6 Access rights A3-56
A3.7 Memory access order A3-58
A3.8 Caches and memory hierarchy A3-63

Chapter A4 The ARMv6-M Instruction Set
A4.1 About the instruction set A4-66
A4.2 Unified Assembler Language A4-68
A4.3 Branch instructions A4-70
A4.4 Data-processing instructions A4-71
A4.5 Status register access instructions A4-74
A4.6 Load and store instructions A4-75
A4.7 Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions A4-77
A4.8 Miscellaneous instructions A4-78
A4.9 Exception-generating instructions A4-79

Chapter A5 The Thumb Instruction Set Encoding
A5.1 Thumb instruction set encoding A5-82
A5.2 16-bit Thumb instruction encoding A5-84
A5.3 32-bit Thumb instruction encoding A5-91

Chapter A6 Thumb Instruction Details
A6.1 Format of instruction descriptions A6-94
A6.2 Standard assembler syntax fields A6-98
A6.3 Conditional execution A6-99
A6.4 Shifts applied to a register A6-101
A6.5 Memory accesses A6-103
A6.6 Hint Instructions A6-104
A6.7 Alphabetical list of ARMv6-M Thumb instructions A6-105

Part B System Level Architecture

Chapter B1 System Level Programmers' Model
B1.1 Introduction to the system level B1-204
B1.2 About the ARMv6-M memory mapped architecture B1-205
B1.3 Overview of system level terminology and operation B1-206
B1.4 Registers B1-211
B1.5 ARMv6-M exception model B1-218

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Chapter B2 System Memory Model
B2.1 About the system memory model B2-246
B2.2 Declarations and support functions B2-247
B2.3 Memory accesses B2-251
B2.4 Control of the endianness model in ARMv6-M B2-254
B2.5 Barrier support for system correctness B2-255

Chapter B3 System Address Map
B3.1 The system address map B3-258
B3.2 System Control Space (SCS) B3-262
B3.3 The system timer, SysTick B3-275
B3.4 Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller, NVIC B3-281
B3.5 Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv6 ..... B3-289

Chapter B4 ARMv6-M System Instructions
B4.1 About the ARMv6-M system instructions B4-304
B4.2 ARMv6-M system instruction descriptions B4-305

Part C Debug Architecture

Chapter C1 ARMv6-M Debug
C1.1 Introduction to ARMv6-M debug C1-316
C1.2 The Debug Access Port C1-318
C1.3 Overview of the ARMv6-M debug features C1-320
C1.4 Debug and reset C1-323
C1.5 Debug event behavior C1-324
C1.6 Debug register support in the SCS C1-328
C1.7 The Data Watchpoint and Trace unit C1-341
C1.8 Breakpoint Unit C1-351

Part D Appendices

Appendix A ARMv6-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs
A.1 CoreSight infrastructure IDs for an ARMv6-M implementation AppxA-360

Appendix B Deprecated and Obsolete Features
B.1 Deprecated features of the ARMv6-M architecture AppxB-364
B.2 Obsolete features of the ARMv6-M architecture AppxB-365

Appendix C ARMv7-M Differences
C.1 ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M compatibility AppxC-368
C.2 About the ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M architecture profiles AppxC-369
C.3 Instruction support AppxC-370

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C.4 Programmers' model support AppxC-371
C.5 Memory model support AppxC-373
C.6 System Control Space register support AppxC-375
C.7 Debug support AppxC-377

Appendix D Legacy Instruction Mnemonics
D.1 Thumb instruction mnemonics AppxD-380
D.2 Pre-UAL pseudo-instruction NOP AppxD-384

Appendix E Pseudocode Definition
E.1 Instruction encoding diagrams and pseudocode AppxE-386
E.2 Limitations of pseudocode AppxE-388
E.3 Data types AppxE-389
E.4 Expressions AppxE-393
E.5 Operators and built-in functions AppxE-395
E.6 Statements and program structure AppxE-401
E.7 Miscellaneous helper procedures and functions AppxE-406

Appendix F Pseudocode Index
F.1 Pseudocode operators and keywords AppxF-410
F.2 Pseudocode functions and procedures AppxF-414

Appendix G Register Index
G.1 ARM core registers AppxG-422
G.2 Memory mapped system registers AppxG-423
G.3 Memory mapped debug registers AppxG-424

Glossary

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

List of Tables
ARMv6-M Architecture Reference Manual

	Change History	ii
Table A3-1	Load-store and element size association	A3-46
Table A3-2	Summary of memory attributes	A3-49
Table A4-1	Branch instructions	A4-70
Table A4-2	Standard data-processing instructions	A4-71
Table A4-3	Shift instructions	A4-72
Table A4-4	Packing and unpacking instructions	A4-73
Table A4-5	Miscellaneous data-processing instructions	A4-73
Table A4-6	Load and store instructions	A4-75
Table A4-7	Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions	A4-77
Table A4-8	Miscellaneous instructions	A4-78
Table A5-1	16-bit Thumb instruction encoding	A5-84
Table A5-2	16-bit Thumb encoding	A5-85
Table A5-3	16-bit Thumb data processing instructions	A5-86
Table A5-4	Special data instructions and branch and exchange	A5-87
Table A5-5	16-bit Thumb Load and store instructions	A5-88
Table A5-6	Miscellaneous 16-bit instructions	A5-89
Table A5-7	Hint instructions	A5-90
Table A5-8	Conditional branch and Supervisor Call instructions	A5-90
Table A5-9	32-bit Thumb encoding	A5-91
Table A5-10	Branch and miscellaneous control instructions	A5-91
Table A5-11	Miscellaneous control instructions	A5-92
Table A6-1	Condition codes	A6-99

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table A6-2	MOV (shift, register shift) equivalences	A6-157
Table B1-1	Mode, privilege and stack relationship	B1-206
Table B1-2	Mnemonics for combinations of xPSR registers	B1-213
Table B1-3	Exception numbers	B1-220
Table B1-4	Vector table format	B1-220
Table B1-5	Exception return behavior	B1-228
Table B1-6	List of supported faults	B1-237
Table B1-7	Lockup conditions	B1-239
Table B3-1	ARMv6-M address map	B3-259
Table B3-2	Subdivision of the System region of the ARMv6-M address map	B3-260
Table B3-3	SCS address space regions	B3-262
Table B3-4	System control and ID register summary	B3-263
Table B3-5	CPUID Base Register bit assignments	B3-265
Table B3-6	ICSR bit assignments	B3-266
Table B3-7	VTOR bit assignments	B3-268
Table B3-8	AIRCR bit assignments	B3-269
Table B3-9	SCR bit assignments	B3-270
Table B3-10	CCR bit assignments	B3-272
Table B3-11	SHPR2 Register bit assignments	B3-273
Table B3-12	SHPR3 Register bit assignments	B3-273
Table B3-13	SysTick register summary	B3-276
Table B3-14	SYST_CSR bit assignments	B3-277
Table B3-15	SYST_RVR bit assignments	B3-279
Table B3-16	SYST_CVR bit assignments	B3-279
Table B3-17	SYST_CALIB Register bit assignments	B3-280
Table B3-18	NVIC register summary	B3-283
Table B3-19	NVIC_ISER bit assignments	B3-284
Table B3-20	NVIC_ICER bit assignments	B3-285
Table B3-21	NVIC_ISPR bit assignments	B3-286
Table B3-22	NVIC_ICPR bit assignments	B3-287
Table B3-23	NVIC_IPRn bit assignments	B3-288
Table B3-24	MPU register summary	B3-293
Table B3-25	MPU_TYPE Register bit assignments	B3-294
Table B3-26	MPU_CTRL Register bit assignments	B3-295
Table B3-27	MPU_RNR bit assignments	B3-297
Table B3-28	MPU_RBAR bit assignments	B3-298
Table B3-29	MPU_RASR bit assignments	B3-299
Table B3-30	TEX, C, B, and S encoding	B3-301
Table B3-31	Access permissions field encoding	B3-301
Table B3-32	Execute Never encoding	B3-302
Table B4-1	Special register field encoding	B4-304
Table C1-1	PPB debug related regions	C1-316
Table C1-2	Determining the debug support in an ARMv6-M implementation	C1-317
Table C1-3	ROM table entry format	C1-319
Table C1-4	ARMv6-M DAP accessible ROM table	C1-319
Table C1-5	ARM debug authentication signals	C1-320
Table C1-6	Debug related event status	C1-324

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table C1-7 Debug stepping control using the DHCSR C1-326
Table C1-8 DCB register summary C1-328
Table C1-9 SHCSR bit assignments C1-329
Table C1-10 DFSR bit assignments C1-330
Table C1-11 DHCSR bit assignments C1-332
Table C1-12 DCRSR bit assignments C1-336
Table C1-13 DCRDR bit assignments C1-337
Table C1-14 DEMCR bit assignments C1-339
Table C1-15 General DWT function support C1-342
Table C1-16 DWT register summary C1-345
Table C1-17 DWT_CTRL register bit assignments C1-346
Table C1-18 DWT_PCSR bit assignments C1-347
Table C1-19 DWT_COMPx register bit assignments C1-348
Table C1-20 DWT_MASKx register bit assignments C1-349
Table C1-21 DWT_FUNCTIONx register bit assignments C1-350
Table C1-22 BPU register summary C1-352
Table C1-23 BP_CTRL register bit assignments C1-353
Table C1-24 BP_COMPx register bit assignments C1-354
Table A-1 Component and Peripheral ID register formats AppxA-360
Table A-2 ARMv6-M CoreSight management registers AppxA-361
Table C-1 ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M software compatibility AppxC-368
Table C-2 Programmers' model feature comparison AppxC-371
Table D-1 Pre-UAL assembly syntax AppxD-380
Table F-1 Pseudocode operators and keywords AppxF-410
Table F-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures AppxF-414
Table G-1 ARM core register index AppxG-422
Table G-2 Memory-mapped control register index AppxG-423
Table G-3 Memory-mapped debug register index AppxG-424

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

List of Figures
ARMv6-M Architecture Reference Manual

Figure A3-1	Little-endian byte format	A3-44
Figure A3-2	Big-endian byte format	A3-44
Figure A3-3	Little-endian memory system	A3-45
Figure A3-4	Big-endian memory system	A3-45
Figure A3-5	Instruction byte order in memory	A3-46
Figure A3-6	Memory ordering restrictions	A3-60
Figure B1-1	xPSR register layout	B1-212
Figure B1-2	PRIMASK register bit assignments	B1-214
Figure B3-1	CPUID Base Register bit assignments	B3-264
Figure B3-2	ICSR bit assignments	B3-265
Figure B3-3	VTOR bit assignments	B3-267
Figure B3-4	AIRCR bit assignments	B3-268
Figure B3-5	SCR bit assignments	B3-270
Figure B3-6	CCR bit assignments	B3-271
Figure B3-7	SHPR2 Register bit assignments	B3-272
Figure B3-8	SHPR3 Register bit assignments	B3-273
Figure B3-9	SYST_CSR bit assignments	B3-277
Figure B3-10	SYST_RVR bit assignments	B3-278
Figure B3-11	SYST_CVR bit assignments	B3-279
Figure B3-12	SYST_CALIB Register bit assignments	B3-280
Figure B3-13	NVIC_ISER bit assignments	B3-284
Figure B3-14	NVIC_ICER bit assignments	B3-285
Figure B3-15	NVIC_ISPR bit assignments	B3-286

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Figure B3-16 NVIC_ICPR bit assignments B3-287
Figure B3-17 NVIC_IPRn bit assignments B3-288
Figure B3-18 MPU_TYPE Register bit assignments B3-294
Figure B3-19 MPU_CTRL Register bit assignments B3-295
Figure B3-20 MPU_RNR bit assignments B3-296
Figure B3-21 MPU_RBAR bit assignments B3-297
Figure B3-22 MPU_RASR bit assignments B3-299
Figure C1-1 DBGRESTART / DBGRESTARTED handshake C1-321
Figure C1-2 SHCSR bit assignments C1-329
Figure C1-3 DFSR bit assignments C1-330
Figure C1-4 DHCSR bit assignments C1-332
Figure C1-5 DCRSR bit assignments C1-335
Figure C1-6 DCRDR bit assignments C1-337
Figure C1-7 DEMCR bit assignments C1-339
Figure C1-8 DWT_CTRL register bit assignments C1-346
Figure C1-9 DWT_PCSR bit assignments C1-347
Figure C1-10 DWT_COMPx register bit assignments C1-348
Figure C1-11 DWT_MASKx register bit assignments C1-348
Figure C1-12 DWT_FUNCTIONx register bit assignments C1-349
Figure C1-13 BP_CTRL register bit assignments C1-352
Figure C1-14 BP_COMPx register bit assignments C1-354

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Preface

This preface introduces the *ARM®v6-M Architecture Reference Manual*. It contains the following sections:

- *About this manual* on page xvi
- *Using this manual* on page xvii
- *Conventions* on page xix
- *Additional reading* on page xx
- *Feedback* on page xxi.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

About this manual

This manual documents a substantially reduced version of the ARMv7 Microcontroller profile. This architecture variant aligns strongly with the ARMv6 Thumb instruction set and is known as ARMv6-M. See page A1-25 for short-form definitions of all the ARMv7 profiles and how they relate to ARMv6-M.

Part A describes the application level programming model and memory model along with the instruction set as visible to the application programmer. This information is required to program applications or to develop the toolchain components. That is, the compiler, linker, assembler, and disassembler, but not the debugger.

Note

The ARM® architecture supports a common procedure calling standard, the *ARM Architecture Procedure Calling Standard* (AAPCS).

Part B describes the system level programming model and system level support instructions required for system correctness. The system level supports the ARMv6-M exception model. It also provides features for configuration and control of processor resources and management of memory access rights.

This information, together with Part A, is required for operating system and/or system support software. It includes details of the exception model, memory protection, that is management of access rights, and integrated system component support.

Part B is profile specific. ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M share a new programmers' model and as such have some fundamental differences at the system level from the other ARM architecture profiles. As ARMv6-M is a memory-mapped architecture, the system memory map is documented here.

Part C describes the debug features that support the ARMv6-M debug architecture, and the programming interface to the debug environment.

This information, together with Parts A and B, is required to write a debugger. Part C is profile specific and includes several debug features unique within the architecture to the Microcontroller profile.

The appendices provide information that relates to, but is not part of, the ARMv6-M architecture profile specification.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Using this manual

The information in this manual is organized into four parts, as described in this section.

Part A, Application level architecture

Part A describes the application level view of the architecture. It contains the following chapters:

Chapter A1 ***Introduction***

Introduces the ARM architecture profiles, including the *Microcontroller* (M) profile, and the relationship between the ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M architecture profiles.

Chapter A2 ***Application Level Programmers' Model***

Gives an application-level view of the ARMv6-M programmers' model, including a summary of the exception model.

Chapter A3 ***ARM Architecture Memory Model***

Gives an application-level view of the ARMv6-M memory model, including the ARM memory attributes and memory ordering model.

Chapter A4 ***The ARMv6-M Instruction Set***

Describes the ARMv6-M Thumb® instruction set.

Chapter A5 ***The Thumb Instruction Set Encoding***

Describes the encoding of the Thumb instruction set.

Chapter A6 ***Thumb Instruction Details***

Provides detailed reference material on each Thumb instruction, arranged alphabetically by instruction mnemonic, including summary information for system-level instructions.

Part B, System level architecture

Part B describes the system level view of the architecture. It contains the following chapters:

Chapter B1 ***System Level Programmers' Model***

Gives a system-level view of the ARMv6-M programmers' model, including the exception model.

Chapter B2 ***System Memory Model***

Provides a pseudocode description of the ARMv6-M memory model.

Chapter B3 ***System Address Map***

Describes the ARMv6-M system address map, including the memory-mapped registers and the optional *Protected Memory System Architecture* (PMSA).

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Chapter B4 ***ARMv6-M System Instructions***

Provides detailed reference material on the system level instructions.

Part C, Debug architecture

Part C describes the Debug architecture. It contains the following chapter:

Chapter C1 ***ARMv6-M Debug***

Describes the ARMv6-M debug architecture.

Part D, Appendices

This manual contains the following appendices:

Appendix A ***ARMv6-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs***

Summarizes the ARM CoreSight™ compatible ID registers used for ARM architecture infrastructure identification.

Appendix D ***Legacy Instruction Mnemonics***

Describes the legacy mnemonics and their *Unified Assembler Language* (UAL) equivalents..

Appendix B *Deprecated and Obsolete Features*

Lists the features of the ARMv6-M architecture that are deprecated or obsolete.

Appendix C ***ARMv7-M Differences***

Summarizes the differences between the ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M Microcontroller profiles.

Appendix E ***Pseudocode Definition***

Provides the formal definition of the pseudocode used in this manual.

Appendix F ***Pseudocode Index***

Index to definitions of pseudocode operators, keywords, functions, and procedures.

Appendix G ***Register Index***

An index to register descriptions in the manual.

Glossary

Glossary of terms used in this manual. The glossary does not include terms associated with the pseudocode.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Conventions

This manual employs typographic and other conventions intended to improve its ease of use.

Typographic conventions

The typographical conventions are:

italic	Highlights important notes, introduces special terminology, and denotes internal cross-references and citations.
bold	Denotes signal names and is used for terms in descriptive lists, where appropriate.
`monospace`	Used for assembler syntax descriptions, pseudocode, and source code examples. Also used in the main text for instruction mnemonics and for references to other items appearing in assembler syntax descriptions, pseudocode, and source code examples.
SMALL CAPITALS	Used for a few terms that have specific technical meanings, and are included in the *Glossary*.

Signals

In general this specification does not define processor signals, but it does include some signal examples and recommendations. The signal conventions are:

Signal level	The level of an asserted signal depends on whether the signal is active-HIGH or active-LOW. Asserted means: • HIGH for active-HIGH signals • LOW for active-LOW signals.
Lower-case n	At the start or end of a signal name denotes an active-LOW signal.

Numbers

Numbers are normally written in decimal. Binary numbers are preceded by `0b`, and hexadecimal numbers by `0x`. Both are written in a `monospaced` font.

Pseudocode descriptions

This manual uses a form of pseudocode to provide precise descriptions of the specified functionality. This pseudocode is written in a `monospaced` font, and is described in Appendix E *Pseudocode Definition*.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Additional reading

This section lists relevant publications from ARM and third parties.

See the Infocenter, `http://infocenter.arm.com`, for access to ARM documentation.

ARM publications

- *ARMv7-M Architecture Reference Manual* (ARM DDI 0403)
- *ARM Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R edition.*(ARM DDI 0406)
- *Procedure Call Standard for the ARM Architecture* (ARM GENC 003534)
- *ARM Debug Interface v5 Architecture Specification* (ARM IHI 0031)
- *CoreSight Architecture Specification* (ARM IHI 0029).

Other publications

The following book is referred to in this manual, or provide more information:

- *Memory Consistency Models for Shared Memory-Multiprocessors*, Kourosh Gharachorloo, Stanford University Technical Report CSL-TR-95-685.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Feedback

ARM welcomes feedback on its documentation.

Feedback on this book

If you have comments on the content of this manual, send e-mail to errata@arm.com. Give:

- the title
- the number, ARM DDI 0419C
- the page numbers to which your comments apply
- a concise explanation of your comments.

ARM also welcomes general suggestions for additions and improvements.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Part A

Application Level Architecture

Chapter A1
Introduction

This chapter introduces the ARM architecture profiles, and the ARMv6-M profile that this manual defines. It contains the following sections:

- *About the ARM architecture profiles* on page A1-26
- *Privileged and unprivileged execution* on page A1-27.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A1.1 About the ARM architecture profiles

ARMv7 is documented as a set of architecture profiles, defined as follows:

ARMv7-A the application profile for systems supporting the ARM and Thumb instruction sets, and requiring virtual address support in the memory management model.

ARMv7-R the realtime profile for systems supporting the ARM and Thumb instruction sets, and requiring physical address only support in the memory management model.

ARMv7-M the microcontroller profile for systems supporting only the Thumb instruction set, and where overall size and deterministic operation for an implementation are more important than absolute performance.

While profiles were formally introduced with the ARMv7 development, the A-profile and R-profile have existed implicitly in earlier versions, associated with the *Virtual Memory System Architecture* (VMSA) and *Protected Memory System Architecture* (PMSA) respectively.

ARMv6-M is a subset of ARMv7-M, that provides:

- a lightweight version of the ARMv7-M programming model
- the Debug Extension that includes architecture extensions for debug support, see Chapter C1 *ARMv6-M Debug*.
- ARMv6 Thumb 16-bit instruction set compatibility at the application level
- an optional Unprivileged/Privileged Extension, see *Privileged and unprivileged execution* on page A1-27
- an optional PMSA Extension, see *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv6* on page B3-289.

Note

ARMv6-M is upwardly compatible with ARMv7-M, meaning that application level and system level software developed for ARMv6-M can execute unmodified on ARMv7-M. ARMv7-M to ARMv6-M compatibility is not an architecture requirement. Many of the system level registers defined to support ARMv7-M features are reserved in ARMv6-M. Software must treat values read from reserved registers as UNKNOWN. Hardware must implement these values as RAZ/WI.

A1.1.1 Instruction Set Architecture (ISA)

ARMv6-M supports the Thumb instruction set, including a small number of 32-bit instructions introduced to the architecture as part of the Thumb-2 technology in ARMv6T2.

ARMv6-M supports the 16-bit Thumb instructions from ARMv7-M, in addition to the 32-bit `BL`, `DMB`, `DSB`, `ISB`, `MRS` and `MSR` instructions.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A1.2 Privileged and unprivileged execution

In ARMv7-M, software can run either at privileged or unprivileged level. In systems implemented with the ARMv6-M base architecture, all software runs at privileged level.

By adding the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension, ARMv6-M systems can use the same privilege levels as ARMv7-M while still having the benefit of very low gate count.

In addition, with the same privilege levels as ARMv7-M, ARMv6-M systems can use the optional *Memory Protection Unit* (MPU) that the PMSA Extension provides.

The ARMv6-M implementation options are:

- ARMv6-M base architecture only
- ARMv6-M base architecture + Unprivileged/Privileged Extension
- ARMv6-M base architecture + Unprivileged/Privileged Extension + PMSA Extension.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Chapter A2
Application Level Programmers' Model

This chapter provides an application-level view of the ARMv6-M programmers' model. It contains the following sections:

- *About the application level programmers' model* on page A2-30
- *ARM processor data types and arithmetic* on page A2-31
- *Registers and execution state* on page A2-36
- *Exceptions, faults and interrupts* on page A2-39
- *Coprocessor support* on page A2-40.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A2.1 About the application level programmers' model

This chapter contains the programmers' model information required for developing applications. See Chapter B1 *System Level Programmers' Model* for system information required to service and support application execution under an operating system.

A2.1.1 Privileged execution

System level support requires access to all features and facilities of the architecture, a level of access generally referred to as privileged operation. When an operating system supports both privileged and unprivileged operation, an application usually runs unprivileged.

An application running unprivileged:

- means the operating system can allocate system resources to the application, as either private or shared resources
- provides a degree of protection from other processes and tasks, and so helps protect the operating system from malfunctioning applications.

An ARMv6-M implementation only supports privileged operation, unless it includes the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension, in which case the implementation supports both unprivileged and privileged operation.

A2.1.2 Interaction with the system level architecture

Thread mode is the fundamental mode for application execution in ARMv6-M and is selected on reset. Thread mode can raise a supervisor call using the `SVC` instruction, generating a Supervisor call exception, SVCall. Alternatively, if running privileged, Thread mode can handle system access and control directly.

All exceptions execute in Handler mode. SVCall handlers manage resources, such as interaction with peripherals, memory allocation and management of software stacks, on behalf of the application.

In ARMv6-M implementations that include the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension:

- execution in Handler mode is always privileged
- execution in Thread mode can be privileged or unprivileged, depending on the value of CONTROL.nPRIV.

This chapter only provides system level information that is required to understand application level operation. Where appropriate it:

- provides an overview of the system level information
- provides references to the system level descriptions in Chapter B1 *System Level Programmers' Model* and elsewhere.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A2.2 ARM processor data types and arithmetic

ARM processors support the following data types in memory:

Byte 8 bits
Halfword 16 bits
Word 32 bits
Doubleword 64 bits.

Processor registers are 32 bits in size. The Thumb instruction set contains instructions supporting the following data types held in registers:

- 32-bit pointers
- unsigned or signed 32-bit integers
- unsigned 16-bit or 8-bit integers, held in zero-extended form
- signed 16-bit or 8-bit integers, held in sign-extended form
- unsigned or signed 64-bit integers held in two registers.

Load and store operations can transfer bytes, halfwords, or words to and from memory. Loads of bytes or halfwords zero-extend or sign-extend the data as it is loaded, as specified in the appropriate load instruction.

The instruction sets include load and store operations that transfer two or more words to and from memory. You can load and store 64-bit integers using these instructions.

When any of the data types is described as *unsigned*, the N-bit data value represents a non-negative integer in the range 0 to 2^N-1, using normal binary format.

When any of these types is described as *signed*, the N-bit data value represents an integer in the range -2^{N-1} to $+2^{N-1}$-1, using two's complement format.

ARMv6-M has no direct instruction support for 64-bit integers.

Note

ARMv7-M has limited support for 64-bit integers. Most 64-bit operations require sequences of two or more instructions to synthesize them.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A2.2.1 Integer arithmetic

The instruction set provides a wide variety of operations on the values in registers, including bitwise logical operations, shifts, additions, subtractions, and multiplication. This manual describes these operations using *pseudocode*, usually in one of the following ways:

- Using the pseudocode operators and built-in functions defined in *Operators and built-in functions* on page AppxE-395.
- Using pseudocode helper functions defined in the main text.
- Using a sequence of the form:
  1. Using the `SInt()`, `UInt()`, and `Int()` built-in functions defined in *Converting bitstrings to integers* on page AppxE-398 to convert the bitstring contents of the instruction operands to the unbounded integers that they represent as two's complement or unsigned integers. *Converting bitstrings to integers* on page AppxE-398 defines these functions.
  2. Using mathematical operators, built-in functions and helper functions on those unbounded integers to calculate other two's complement or unsigned integers.
  3. Using the bitstring extraction operator defined in *Bitstring extraction* on page AppxE-396 to convert an unbounded integer result into a bitstring result that can be written to a register.

Appendix E *Pseudocode Definition* describes the ARM pseudocode.

Shift and rotate operations

ARMv6-M instructions use the following types of shift and rotate operations:

Logical Shift Left

(`LSL`) moves each bit of a bitstring left by a specified number of bits. Zeros are shifted in at the right end of the bitstring. Bits that are shifted off the left end of the bitstring are discarded, except that the last such bit can be produced as a carry output.

Logical Shift Right

(`LSR`) moves each bit of a bitstring right by a specified number of bits. Zeros are shifted in at the left end of the bitstring. Bits that are shifted off the right end of the bitstring are discarded, except that the last such bit can be produced as a carry output.

Arithmetic Shift Right

(`ASR`) moves each bit of a bitstring right by a specified number of bits. Copies of the leftmost bit are shifted in at the left end of the bitstring. Bits that are shifted off the right end of the bitstring are discarded, except that the last such bit can be produced as a carry output.

Rotate Right (`ROR`) moves each bit of a bitstring right by a specified number of bits. Each bit that is shifted off the right end of the bitstring is re-introduced at the left end. The last bit shifted off the the right end of the bitstring can be produced as a carry output.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Pseudocode details of shift and rotate operations

These shift and rotate operations are supported in pseudocode by the following functions:

```
// LSL_C()
// =======

(bits(N), bit) LSL_C(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    assert shift > 0;
    extended_x = x : Zeros(shift);
    result = extended_x<N-1:0>;
    carry_out = extended_x<N>;
    return (result, carry_out);

// LSL()
// =====

bits(N) LSL(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    assert shift >= 0;
    if shift == 0 then
        result = x;
    else
        (result, -) = LSL_C(x, shift);
    return result;

// LSR_C()
// =======

(bits(N), bit) LSR_C(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    assert shift > 0;
    extended_x = ZeroExtend(x, shift+N);
    result = extended_x<shift+N-1:shift>;
    carry_out = extended_x<shift-1>;
    return (result, carry_out);

// LSR()
// =====

bits(N) LSR(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    assert shift >= 0;
    if shift == 0 then
        result = x;
    else
        (result, -) = LSR_C(x, shift);
    return result;

// ASR_C()
// =======

(bits(N), bit) ASR_C(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    assert shift > 0;
    extended_x = SignExtend(x, shift+N);
    result = extended_x<shift+N-1:shift>;
    carry_out = extended_x<shift-1>;
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
    return (result, carry_out);

// ASR()
// =====

bits(N) ASR(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    assert shift >= 0;
    if shift == 0 then
        result = x;
    else
        (result, -) = ASR_C(x, shift);
    return result;

// ROR_C()
// =======

(bits(N), bit) ROR_C(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    assert shift != 0;
    m = shift MOD N;
    result = LSR(x,m) OR LSL(x,N-m);
    carry_out = result<N-1>;
    return (result, carry_out);

// ROR()
// =====

bits(N) ROR(bits(N) x, integer shift)
    if n == 0 then
        result = x;
    else
        (result, -) = ROR_C(x, shift);
    return result;

// RRX_C()
// =======

(bits(N), bit) RRX_C(bits(N) x, bit carry_in)
    result = carry_in : x<N-1:1>;
    carry_out = x<0>;
    return (result, carry_out);

// RRX()
// =====

bits(N) RRX(bits(N) x, bit carry_in)
    (result, -) = RRX_C(x, carry_in);
    return result;
```

Note

ARMv6-M does not support the `RRX` instruction and therefore does not use the `RRX_C()` or `RRX()` functions. Pseudocode functions that are common with ARMv7-M reference these functions, but they are never called in ARMv6-M operation.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Pseudocode details of addition and subtraction

In pseudocode, addition and subtraction can be performed on any combination of unbounded integers and bitstrings, provided that if they are performed on two bitstrings, the bitstrings must be identical in length. The result is another unbounded integer if both operands are unbounded integers, and a bitstring of the same length as the bitstring operand(s) otherwise. For the precise definition of these operations, see *Addition and subtraction* on page AppxE-399.

The main addition and subtraction instructions can produce status information about both unsigned carry and signed overflow conditions. This status information can be used to synthesize multi-word additions and subtractions. In pseudocode the `AddWithCarry()` function provides an addition with a carry input and carry and overflow outputs:

```
// AddWithCarry()
// ==============

(bits(N), bit, bit) AddWithCarry(bits(N) x, bits(N) y, bit carry_in)
    unsigned_sum = UInt(x) + UInt(y) + UInt(carry_in);
    signed_sum   = SInt(x) + SInt(y) + UInt(carry_in);
    result       = unsigned_sum<N-1:0>;  // same value as signed_sum<N-1:0>
    carry_out    = if UInt(result) == unsigned_sum then '0' else '1';
    overflow     = if SInt(result) == signed_sum then '0' else '1';
    return (result, carry_out, overflow);
```

An important property of the `AddWithCarry()` function is that if:

```
(result, carry_out, overflow) = AddWithCarry(x, NOT(y), carry_in)
```

then:

- If `carry_in == '1'`, then `result == x-y` with `overflow == '1'` if signed overflow occurred during the subtraction and `carry_out == '1'` if unsigned borrow did not occur during the subtraction. That is, if `x >= y`.
- If `carry_in == '0'`, then `result == x-y-1` with `overflow == '1'` if signed overflow occurred during the subtraction and `carry_out == '1'` if unsigned borrow did not occur during the subtraction. That is, if `x > y`.

Together, these mean that the `carry_in` and `carry_out` bits in `AddWithCarry()` calls can act as *NOT borrow* flags for subtractions and also as *carry* flags for additions.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A2.3 Registers and execution state

The application level programmers' model provides details of the general-purpose and special-purpose registers visible to the application programmer, the ARM memory model, and the instruction set used to load registers from memory, store registers to memory, or manipulate data within the registers.

Applications often interact with external events. A summary of the types of events recognized in the architecture, along with the mechanisms provided in the architecture to interact with events, is included in *Exceptions, faults and interrupts* on page A2-39. How events are handled is a system level topic described in *ARMv6-M exception model* on page B1-218.

A2.3.1 ARM core registers

There are thirteen general-purpose 32-bit registers, R0-R12, and an additional three 32-bit registers that have special names and usage models:

SP Stack Pointer, used a pointer to the active stack. For usage restrictions see *Use of 0b1101 as a register specifier* on page A5-83. This is preset to the top of the Main stack on reset. See *The SP registers* on page B1-211 for more information. SP is sometimes referred to as R13.

LR Link Register stores the Return Link. This is a value that relates to the return address from a subroutine that is entered using a Branch with Link instruction. The LR register is also updated on exception entry, see *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-224. LR is sometimes referred to as R14.

Note

LR can be used for other purposes when it is not required to support a return from a subroutine.

PC Program Counter, see *Use of 0b1111 as a register specifier* on page A5-82 for more information. The PC is loaded with the Reset handler start address on reset. PC is sometimes referred to as R15.

Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations

In pseudocode, the `R[]` function is used to:

- Read or write R0-R12, SP, and LR, using n == 0-12, 13, and 14 respectively.
- Read the PC, using n == 15.

This function has prototypes:

```
bits(32) R[integer n]
    assert n >= 0 && n <= 15;

R[integer n] = bits(32) value
    assert n >= 0 && n <= 14;
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

See *Pseudocode details for ARM core register access* on page B1-216 for more information about the `R[]` function. Writing an address to the PC causes either a simple branch to that address or an *interworking* branch that, in ARMv6-M, must select the Thumb instruction set to execute after the branch.

Note

The following pseudocode defines behavior in ARMv6-M and the M-profile in general. It is much simpler than the equivalent pseudo-function definitions that apply to other ARM architecture profiles.

A simple branch is performed by the `BranchWritePC()` function:

```
// BranchWritePC()
// ===============

BranchWritePC(bits(32) address)
    BranchTo(address<31:1>:'0');
```

The `BXWritePC()` and `BLXWritePC()` functions each perform an interworking branch:

```
// BXWritePC()
// ===========

BXWritePC(bits(32) address)
    if CurrentMode == Mode_Handler && address<31:28> == '1111' then
        ExceptionReturn(address<27:0>);
    else
        EPSR.T = address<0>;  // if EPSR.T == 0, a HardFault
                              // is taken on the next instruction
        BranchTo(address<31:1>:'0');

// BLXWritePC()
// ============

BLXWritePC(bits(32) address)
    EPSR.T = address<0>;  // if EPSR.T == 0, a HardFault is taken on the next instruction
    BranchTo(address<31:1>:'0');
```

The `LoadWritePC()` and `ALUWritePC()` functions are used for two cases where the behavior was systematically modified between architecture versions. The functions simplify to aliases of the branch functions in the M-profile architecture variants:

```
// LoadWritePC()
// =============

LoadWritePC(bits(32) address)
    BXWritePC(address);

// ALUWritePC()
// ============

ALUWritePC(bits(32) address)
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
BranchWritePC(address);
```

A2.3.2 The Application Program Status Register

Program status is reported in the 32-bit APSR. The APSR bit assignments are:

APSR bit fields are in the following categories:

- Reserved bits are allocated to system features or are available for future expansion. See *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-212 for more information about currently allocated reserved bits. Application level software must ignore values read from reserved bits, and preserve their value on a write. The bits are defined as UNK/SBZP.
- Flags that many instructions can update:

  N, bit [31] Negative condition code flag. Set to bit [31] of the result of the instruction. If the result is regarded as a two's complement signed integer, then N is set to 1 if the result is negative and set to 0 if it is positive or zero.

  Z, bit [30] Zero condition code flag. Set to 1 if the result of the instruction is zero, and to 0 otherwise. A result of zero often indicates an equal result from a comparison.

  C, bit [29] Carry condition code flag. Set to 1 if the instruction results in a carry condition, for example an unsigned overflow on an addition.

  V, bit [28] Overflow condition code flag. Set to 1 if the instruction results in an overflow condition, for example a signed overflow on an addition.

Note

The instruction descriptions in Chapter A6 *Thumb Instruction Details* and Chapter B4 *ARMv6-M System Instructions* indicate whether an instruction updates these flags, and if so, which flags are updated and the conditions that determine each update.

A2.3.3 Execution state support

ARMv6-M only executes Thumb instructions, and therefore always executes instructions in Thumb state. See Chapter A6 *Thumb Instruction Details* for a list of the instructions supported.

In addition to normal program execution, a Debug state exists when the Debug Extension is implemented – see Chapter C1 *ARMv6-M Debug* for more details.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A2.4 Exceptions, faults and interrupts

An exception can be caused by the execution of an exception generating instruction or triggered as a response to a system behavior such as an interrupt, alignment fault or memory system fault. Synchronous and asynchronous exceptions can occur within the architecture.

A2.4.1 System-related events

The following types of exception are system related:

- Supervisor calls that applications use to request a service from the underlying operating system. Using the SVC instruction, the application can instigate a supervisor call for a service requiring privileged access to the system.
- Instruction execution related errors.
- Data memory access errors on any load or store.
- Usage faults from a variety of execution state related errors, such as executing an UNDEFINED instruction.

In general, faults are synchronous to the associated executing instruction. Some system errors can cause an imprecise exception where it is reported at a time bearing no fixed relationship, that is, asynchronously, to the instruction that caused it.

Interrupts are always treated as events that are asynchronous to the program flow.

An ARMv6-M implementation includes:

- A deferred Supervisor call, PendSV. A handler uses this when it requires service from a Supervisor, typically an underlying operating system. The PendSV handler executes when the processor takes the associated exception. PendSV is supported by the ICSR, see *Interrupt Control State Register, ICSR* on page B3-265. See *Exceptions* on page B1-207 for the definition of a pending exception.

  Note

  An application must use the SVC instruction if it requires a supervisor call that is synchronous to program execution.

- A *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller* (NVIC) for external interrupts. See *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller, NVIC* on page B3-281 for information.
- A BKPT instruction that generates a debug event if the Debug Extension is supported and enabled, see *Debug event behavior* on page C1-324 for more information.
- An optional system timer, SysTick, and associated interrupt. See *The system timer, SysTick* on page B3-275 for information.

For power or performance reasons, software might want to notify the system that an action is complete, or provide a hint to the system that it can suspend operation of the current task. The ARMv6-M architecture provides instruction support for the following:

- Send Event and Wait for Event instructions, see *SEV* on page A6-174 and *WFE* on page A6-197
- the Wait For Interrupt instruction,. see *WFI* on page A6-198.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A2.5 Coprocessor support

ARMv6-M does not support coprocessors.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Chapter A3
ARM Architecture Memory Model

This chapter gives an application-level view of the ARMv6-M memory model. It contains the following sections:

- *Address space* on page A3-42
- *Alignment support* on page A3-43
- *Endian support* on page A3-44
- *Synchronization and semaphores* on page A3-47
- *Memory types and attributes and the memory order model* on page A3-48
- *Access rights* on page A3-56
- *Memory access order* on page A3-58
- *Caches and memory hierarchy* on page A3-63.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A3.1 Address space

ARMv6-M is a memory-mapped architecture. *The system address map* on page B3-258 describes the ARMv6-M address map.

The ARMv6-M architecture uses a single, flat address space of 2^{32} 8-bit bytes, covering 4GB. Byte addresses are treated as unsigned numbers, running from 0 to 2^{32} - 1.

This address space is regarded as consisting of 2^{30} 32-bit words, each of whose addresses is word-aligned, meaning that the address is divisible by 4. The word whose word-aligned address is A consists of the four bytes with addresses A, A+1, A+2 and A+3. The address space can also be considered as consisting of 2^{31} 16-bit halfwords, each of whose addresses is halfword-aligned, meaning that the address is divisible by 2. The halfword whose halfword-aligned address is A consists of the two bytes with addresses A and A+1.

For ARMv6-M, instruction fetches are always halfword-aligned and data accesses are always naturally aligned.

Address calculations are normally performed using ordinary integer instructions. This means that they wrap around if they overflow or underflow the address space. Another way of describing this is that any address calculation is reduced modulo 2^{32}.

Normal sequential execution of instructions effectively calculates:

```
(address_of_current_instruction) + (size_of_executed_instruction)
```

after each instruction to determine the instruction to execute next. If this calculation overflows the top of the address space, the result is UNPREDICTABLE. In ARMv6-M this condition cannot occur because the top of memory is defined to always have the *eXecute Never* (XN) memory attribute associated with it. See *The system address map* on page B3-258 for more information. An access violation is reported if this scenario occurs.

The information in this section only applies to instructions that are executed, including those that fail their condition code check. Most ARM implementations prefetch instructions ahead of the currently-executing instruction.

`LDM`, `POP`, `PUSH`, and `STM` instructions access a sequence of words at increasing memory addresses, effectively incrementing a memory address by 4 for each register load or store. If this calculation overflows the top of the address space, the result is UNPREDICTABLE.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A3.2 Alignment support

ARMv6-M always generates a fault when an unaligned access occurs.

Writes to the PC are restricted according to the rules that *Use of 0b1111 as a register specifier* on page A5-82 describes.

A3.2.1 Alignment behavior

Address alignment affects data accesses and updates to the PC.

Alignment and data access

The following data accesses always generate an alignment fault:

- Non word-aligned `LDM` and `POP`
- Non word-aligned `STM` and `PUSH`
- Non halfword-aligned `LDR{S}H` and `STRH`
- Non word-aligned `LDR` and `STR`.

Alignment and updates to the PC

All instruction fetches are halfword-aligned.

For exception entry and return:

- exception entry using a vector with bit [0] clear produces an invalid execution state
- execution of a reserved EXC_RETURN is UNPREDICTABLE
- loading an unaligned value from the stack into the PC on an exception return is UNPREDICTABLE.

For all other cases where the PC is updated:

- Bit [0] of the value is ignored when loading the PC using an `ADD` or `MOV` instruction.
- A `BLX`, `BX`, or `POP` instruction produces an invalid execution state if bit [0] of the value written to the PC is zero.

Note

Attempting to execute an instruction while in an invalid execution state causes either a HardFault exception or a Lockup condition.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A3.3 Endian support

The address space rules, defined in *Address space* on page A3-42, require that for an address A:

- the word at address A consists of the bytes at addresses A, A+1, A+2 and A+3
- the halfword at address A consists of the bytes at addresses A and A+1
- the halfword at address A+2 consists of the bytes at addresses A+2 and A+3
- the word at address A therefore consists of the halfwords at addresses A and A+2.

However, this does not fully specify the mappings between words, halfwords and bytes. A memory system uses either a *little-endian* or a *big-endian* mapping scheme that defines the endianness of the memory system.

In a little-endian memory system:

- a byte or halfword at address A is the least significant byte or halfword within the word at that address
- a byte at a halfword address A is the least significant byte within the halfword at that address.

Figure A3-1 shows a little-endian mapping between bytes from memory and the interpreted value in an ARM register.

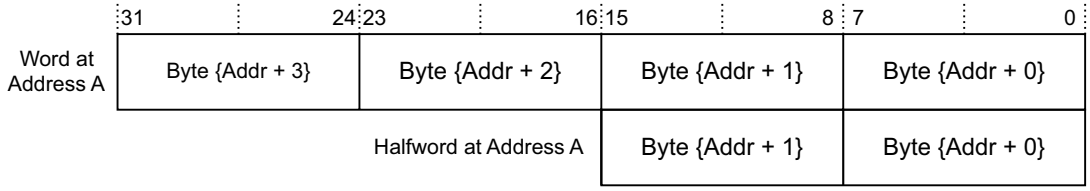


Figure A3-1 Little-endian byte format

In a big-endian memory system:

- a byte or halfword at address A is the most significant byte or halfword within the word at that address
- a byte at a halfword address A is the most significant byte within the halfword at that address.

Figure A3-2 shows a big-endian mapping between bytes from memory and the interpreted value in an ARM register.

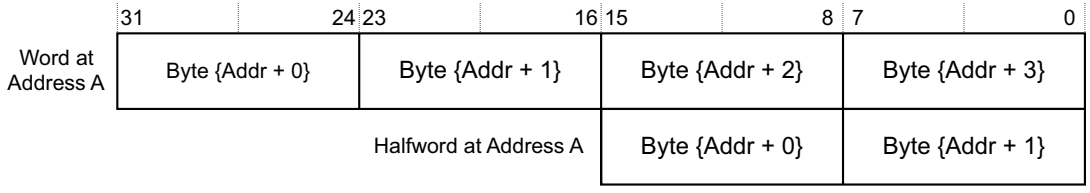


Figure A3-2 Big-endian byte format

For a word address A, Figure A3-3 on page A3-45 and Figure A3-4 on page A3-45 show how the word at address A, the halfwords at address A and A+2, and the bytes at addresses A, A+1, A+2 and A+3 map onto each other for each endianness.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

MSByte	MSByte-1	LSByte+1	LSByte
Word at Address A			
Halfword at Address A+2		Halfword at Address A	
Byte at Address A+3	Byte at Address A+2	Byte at Address A+1	Byte at Address A

Figure A3-3 Little-endian memory system

MSByte	MSByte-1	LSByte+1	LSByte
Word at Address A			
Halfword at Address A		Halfword at Address A+2	
Byte at Address A	Byte at Address A+1	Byte at Address A+2	Byte at Address A+3

Figure A3-4 Big-endian memory system

The big-endian and little-endian mapping schemes determine the order in which the bytes of a word or halfword are interpreted.

For example, loading a 4-byte word from address `0x1000` results in accessing the bytes contained at memory locations `0x1000`, `0x1001`, `0x1002` and `0x1003`, regardless of the mapping scheme used. The mapping scheme determines the significance of those bytes.

A3.3.1 Controlling endianness in ARMv6-M

In ARMv6-M, it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the selection of big-endian or little-endian memory mapping is fixed, or is determined from a control input on a reset. The endian mapping has the following restrictions:

- The endianness setting only applies to data accesses. Instruction fetches are always little endian.
- Loads and stores to the *Private Peripheral Bus* (PPB) are always little endian. See *General rules for PPB register accesses* on page B3-260 for more information.

For information on endian control and status see *Control of the endianness model in ARMv6-M* on page B2-254.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Instruction alignment and byte ordering

ARMv6-M enforces 16-bit alignment on all instructions. This means that 32-bit instructions are treated as two halfwords, `hw1` and `hw2`, with `hw1` at the lower address.

In instruction encoding diagrams, `hw1` is shown to the left of `hw2`. This results in the encoding diagrams reading more naturally. Figure A3-5 shows the byte order of a 32-bit Thumb instruction.

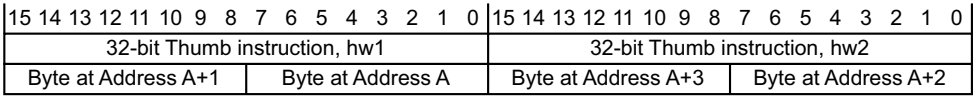


Figure A3-5 Instruction byte order in memory

A3.3.2 Element size and endianness

The effect of the endianness mapping on data applies to the size of the elements being transferred in the load and store instructions. Table A3-1 shows the element size of each of the load and store instructions.

Table A3-1 Load-store and element size association

Instruction class	Instructions	Element size
Load or store byte	`LDR{S}B, STRB`	byte
Load or store halfword	`LDR{S}H, STRH`	halfword
Load or store word	`LDR, STR`	word
Load or store multiple words	`LDM, STM, PUSH, POP`	word

A3.3.3 Instructions to reverse bytes in a general-purpose register

When an application or device driver has to interface to memory-mapped peripheral registers or shared memory structures that are not the same endianness as that of the internal data structures, or the endianness of the OS, an efficient way of being able to explicitly transform the endianness of the data is required.

ARMv6-M provides instructions for the following byte transformations:

`REV` Reverse word, four bytes, register, for transforming 32-bit representations.

`REVSH` Reverse halfword and sign extend, for transforming signed 16-bit representations.

`REV16` Reverse packed halfwords in a register for transforming unsigned 16-bit representations.

See the instruction definitions in Chapter A6 *Thumb Instruction Details* for more information.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A3.4 Synchronization and semaphores

Exclusive access instructions support non-blocking shared-memory synchronization primitives that enable calculation to be performed on the semaphore between the read and write phases, and scale for multi-processor system designs.

ARMv6-M does not support exclusive accesses.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A3.5 Memory types and attributes and the memory order model

The ARM architecture defines a set of memory attributes with the characteristics required to support all memory and devices in the system memory map. The ordering of accesses for regions of memory is also defined by the memory attributes.

The following mutually-exclusive main memory type attributes describe the memory regions:

- Normal
- Device
- Strongly-ordered.

Memory used for program execution and data storage generally complies with Normal memory. Examples of Normal memory technology are:

- Preprogrammed Flash. Updating Flash memory can impose stricter ordering rules.
- ROM.
- SRAM.
- SDRAM and DDR memory.

System peripherals, or I/O, generally conform to different access rules that are defined as Strongly-ordered or Device memory. Examples of I/O accesses are:

- FIFOs where consecutive accesses add, or write, and remove, or read, queued values
- interrupt controller registers where an access can be used as an interrupt acknowledge that changes the state of the controller itself
- memory controller configuration registers that set up the timing of areas of Normal memory
- memory-mapped peripherals where accessing memory locations causes side effects in the system.

In addition to the main memory type attributes, the *Shareable* attribute indicates whether Normal or Device memory is private to a single processor, or accessible from multiple processors or other bus master resources, such as an intelligent peripheral with DMA capability.

Strongly-ordered memory is required where it is necessary to ensure strict ordering of the access relative to what occurred in program order before the access and after it. Strongly-ordered memory always assumes the resource is Shareable.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table A3-2 provides a summary of the memory attributes.

Table A3-2 Summary of memory attributes

Memory type attribute	Shareable attribute	Other attribute	Description
Strongly-ordered	Shareable		All memory accesses to Strongly-ordered memory occur in program order. All Strongly-ordered accesses are assumed to be Shareable.
Device	Shareable		Handles memory mapped peripherals that are shared by several processors.
	Non-Shareable		Handles memory mapped peripherals that are used only by a single processor.
Normal	Shareable	Non-cacheable Write-Through cacheable Write-Back cacheable	Handles Normal memory that is shared between several processors.
	Non-Shareable	Non-cacheable Write-Through cacheable Write-Back cacheable	Handles Normal memory that is used only by a single processor.

A3.5.1 Atomicity in the ARM architecture

Atomicity is a feature of memory accesses, described as *atomic* accesses. The ARM architecture description refers to two types of atomicity, defined in:

- *Single-copy atomicity*
- *Multi-copy atomicity* on page A3-50.

Single-copy atomicity

A read or write operation is *single-copy atomic* if the following conditions are both true:

- After any number of write operations to an operand, the value of the operand is the value written by one of the write operations. It is impossible for part of the value of the operand to come from one write operation and another part of the value to come from a different write operation.
- When a read operation and a write operation are made to the same operand, the value obtained by the read operation is one of:
  - the value of the operand before the write operation
  - the value of the operand after the write operation.

  It is never the case that the value of the read operation is partly the value of the operand before the write operation and partly the value of the operand after the write operation.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

The only ARMv6-M explicit ARM processor accesses that exhibit single-copy atomicity are:

- all byte transactions
- all halfword transactions to 16-bit aligned locations
- all word transactions to 32-bit aligned locations.

`LDM`, `STM`, `PUSH` and `POP` operations are seen as a sequence of 32-bit transactions aligned to 32 bits. Each of these 32-bit transactions are guaranteed to exhibit single-copy atomicity. Sub-sequences of two or more 32-bit transactions from the sequence might not exhibit single-copy atomicity.

When an access is not single-copy atomic, it is executed as a sequence of smaller accesses, each of which is single-copy atomic, at least at the byte level.

For implicit accesses:

- cache linefills and evictions have no effect on the atomicity of explicit transactions or instruction fetches
- instruction fetches are single-copy atomic at 16-bit granularity.

Multi-copy atomicity

In a multiprocessing system, writes to a memory location are *Multi-copy atomic* if the following conditions are both true:

- all writes to the same location are *serialized*, that is they are observed in the same order by all copies of the location
- a read of a location does not return the value of a write until all copies of the location have seen that write.

Writes to Normal memory are not multi-copy atomic.

All writes to Device and Strongly-Ordered memory that are single-copy atomic are also multi-copy atomic.

All write accesses to the same location are serialized. Write accesses to Normal memory can be repeated up to the point that another write to the same address is observed.

For Normal memory, serialization of writes does not prohibit the merging of writes.

A3.5.2 Normal memory

Normal memory is idempotent, meaning that it exhibits the following properties:

- read transactions can be repeated with no side effects
- repeated read transactions return the last value written to the resource being read
- read transactions can prefetch additional memory locations with no side effects
- write transactions can be repeated with no side effects, provided that the location is unchanged between the repeated writes
- unaligned accesses are supported
- transactions can be merged prior to accessing the target memory system.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Normal memory can be read and write, or read-only. The Normal memory attribute is further defined as being Shareable or Non-Shareable, and describes most memory used in a system.

Accesses to Normal memory conform to the weakly-ordered model of memory ordering. A description of the weakly-ordered model is contained in standard texts describing memory ordering issues. See *Memory Consistency Models for Shared Memory-Multiprocessors* for more information.

All explicit accesses must correspond to the ordering requirements of accesses described in *Memory access order* on page A3-58.

Instructions that conform to the sequence of transactions classification as defined in *Atomicity in the ARM architecture* on page A3-49 can be abandoned if an exception occurs during the sequence of transactions. The instruction is restarted on return from the exception, and one or more of the memory locations can be accessed multiple times. For Normal memory, this can result in repeated write transactions to a location that has been changed between the repeated writes.

Non-Shareable Normal memory

For a Normal memory region, the Non-shareable attribute identifies Normal memory that is likely to be accessed only by a single processor.

A region of memory marked as Non-shareable Normal does not have any requirement to make the effect of a cache transparent for data or instruction accesses. If other observers share the memory system, software must use cache maintenance operations if the presence of caches might lead to coherency issues when communicating between the observers. This cache maintenance requirement is in addition to the barrier operations that are required to ensure memory ordering.

For Non-shareable Normal memory, the Load Exclusive and Store Exclusive synchronization primitives do not take account of the possibility of accesses by more than one observer.

Shareable Normal memory

For Normal memory, the Shareable memory attribute describes Normal memory that is expected to be accessed by multiple processors or other system masters.

A region of Normal memory with the Sharable attribute is one for which the effect of interposing a cache, or caches, on the memory system is entirely transparent to data accesses in the same shareability domain. Explicit software management is required to ensure the coherency of instruction caches.

Implementations can use a variety of mechanisms to support this management requirement, from not caching accesses in Shareable regions to more complex hardware schemes for cache coherency for those regions.

For Shareable Normal memory, the Load-Exclusive and Store-Exclusive synchronization primitives take account of the possibility of accesses by more than one observer in the same Shareability domain.

Note

The Shareable concept enables system designers to specify the locations in Normal memory that must have coherency requirements. However, to facilitate porting of software, software developers must not assume that specifying a memory region as Non-shareable permits software to make assumptions about the

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

incoherency of memory locations between different processors in a shared memory system. Such assumptions are not portable between different multiprocessing implementations that make use of the Shareable concept. Any multiprocessing implementation might implement caches that, inherently, are shared between different processing elements.

Write-through cacheable, Write-back cacheable and Non-cacheable Normal memory

In addition to marking a region of Normal memory as being Shareable or Non-Shareable, regions can also be marked as being one of:

- cacheable write-through
- cacheable write-back
- non-cacheable.

This marking is independent of the marking of a region of memory as being Shareable or Non-Shareable. It indicates the required handling of the data region for reasons other than those to handle the requirements of shared data. As a result, it is acceptable for a region of memory that is marked as being cacheable and shareable not to be held in the cache in an implementation that handles shared regions by not caching the data.

A3.5.3 Device memory

The Device memory type attribute defines memory locations where an access to the location can cause side effects, or where the value returned for a load can vary depending on the number of loads performed. Memory-mapped peripherals and I/O locations are examples of memory regions normally marked as being Device memory.

For explicit accesses from the processor to memory marked as Device:

- all accesses occur at their program size
- the number of accesses is the number specified by the program.

An implementation must not perform more accesses to a Device memory location than are specified by a simple sequential execution of the program, except as a result of an exception. This section describes this permitted effect of an exception.

The architecture does not permit speculative accesses to memory marked as Device.

Address locations marked as Device are Non-cacheable. While writes to Device memory can be buffered, writes can be merged only where the merge maintains all of the following:

- the number of accesses
- the order of the accesses
- the size of each access.

Multiple accesses to the same address must not change the number of accesses to that address. Coalescing of accesses is not permitted for accesses to Device memory.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

When a Device memory operation has side effects that apply to Normal memory regions, software must use a memory barrier to ensure correct operation. For example, after programming the configuration registers of a memory controller, software must perform a barrier operation before it relies on the effect of that programming on memory accesses.

All explicit accesses to Device memory must comply with the ordering requirements of accesses described in *Memory access order* on page A3-58.

An instruction that generates a sequence of accesses as described in *Atomicity in the ARM architecture* on page A3-49 might be abandoned as a result of an exception being taken during the sequence of accesses. On return from the exception the instruction is restarted, and therefore one or more of the memory locations might be accessed multiple times. This can result in repeated write accesses to a location that has been changed between the write accesses.

Note

Software must not use an instruction that generates a sequence of accesses to access Device memory if the instruction might restart after an exception and repeat any accesses. For more information see *Exceptions in Load Multiple and Store Multiple operations* on page B1-231.

Shareable attribute for Device memory regions

Device memory regions can be given the Shareable attribute. This means that a region of Device memory is either:

- Shareable Device memory
- Non-shareable Device memory.

Non-shareable Device memory is defined as only accessible by a single processor. An example of a system supporting Shareable and Non-shareable Device memory is an implementation that supports both:

- a local bus for its private peripherals
- system peripherals implemented on the main shared system bus.

Such a system might have more predictable access times for local peripherals such as watchdog timers or interrupt controllers. In particular, a specific address in a Non-shareable Device memory region might access a different physical peripheral for each processor.

A3.5.4 Strongly-ordered memory

The Strongly-ordered memory type attribute defines memory locations where an access to the location can cause side effects, or where the value returned for a load can vary depending on the number of loads performed. Examples of memory regions normally marked as being Strongly-ordered are memory-mapped peripherals and I/O locations.

For explicit accesses from the processor to memory marked as Strongly-ordered:

- all accesses occur at their program size
- the number of accesses is the number specified by the program.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

An implementation must not perform more accesses to a Strongly-ordered memory location than are specified by a simple sequential execution of the program, except as a result of an exception. This section describes this permitted effect of an exception.

The architecture does not permit speculative data accesses to memory marked as Strongly-ordered.

Address locations in Strongly-ordered memory are not held in a cache, and are always treated as Shareable memory locations.

All explicit accesses to Strongly-ordered memory must correspond to the ordering requirements of accesses described in *Memory access order* on page A3-58.

An instruction that generates a sequence of accesses as described in *Atomicity in the ARM architecture* on page A3-49 might be abandoned as a result of an exception being taken during the sequence of accesses. On return from the exception the instruction is restarted, and therefore one or more of the memory locations might be accessed multiple times. This can result in repeated write accesses to a location that has been changed between the write accesses.

Note

Software must not use an instruction that generates a sequence of accesses to access Strongly-ordered memory if the instruction might restart after an exception and repeat any write accesses. For more information see *Exceptions in Load Multiple and Store Multiple operations* on page B1-231.

A3.5.5 Memory access restrictions

The following restrictions apply to memory accesses:

- For any access X, the bytes accessed by X must all have the same memory type attribute, otherwise, the behavior of the access is UNPREDICTABLE. That is, unaligned accesses that span a boundary between different memory types are UNPREDICTABLE.
- For any two memory accesses X and Y, where X and Y are generated by the same instruction, X and Y must all have the same memory type attribute, otherwise, the results are UNPREDICTABLE. For example, an `LDM` or `STM` that spans a boundary between Normal and Device memory is UNPREDICTABLE.
- An instruction that generates and unaligned memory access to Device or Strongly-ordered memory is UNPREDICTABLE.
- For instructions that generate accesses to Device or Strongly-ordered memory, implementations must not change the sequence of accesses specified by the pseudocode of the instruction. This includes not changing:
  - the number of accesses
  - the time order of the accesses at any particular memory-mapped peripheral
  - the data sizes and other properties of each access.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

In addition, processor implementations expect any attached memory system to be able to identify the memory type of an access, and to obey similar restrictions with regard to the number, time order, data sizes and other properties of the access.

Exceptions to this rule are:

— A processor implementation can break this rule, provided that the information it does supply to the memory system enables the original number, time order, and other details of the accesses to be reconstructed. In addition, the implementation must place a requirement on attached memory systems to do this reconstruction when the accesses are to Device or Strongly-ordered memory.

  For example, the word loads generated by an `LDM` can be paired into 64-bit accesses by an implementation with a 64-bit bus. This is because the instruction semantics ensure that the 64-bit access is always a word load from the lower address followed by a word load from the higher address, provided a requirement is placed on memory systems to unpack the two word loads where the access is to Device or Strongly-ordered memory.

— Any implementation technique that produces results that cannot be observed to be different from those described here is legitimate.

- In ARMv6-M, it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED if interrupts are taken during the execution of a multi-word instruction that uses `LDM`, `STM`, `PUSH` or `POP`. Memory accesses might repeat if a multi-word instruction is restarted after an exception, therefore ARM recommends that multi-word instructions are not used to access memory marked as Device or Strongly-ordered. See *Exceptions in Load Multiple and Store Multiple operations* on page B1-231 for information about the architecture constraints associated with `LDM` and `STM`, and the exception model.

- Multi-access instructions that load or store the PC must only access Normal memory. If they access Device or Strongly-ordered memory the results are UNPREDICTABLE.

- Instruction fetches must only access Normal memory. If they access Device or Strongly-ordered memory, the results are UNPREDICTABLE. For example, instruction fetches must not be performed to areas of memory containing read-sensitive devices, because there is no ordering requirement between instruction fetches and explicit accesses.

To ensure correctness, read-sensitive locations must be marked as non-executable, see *Privilege level access controls for instruction accesses* on page A3-56. In ARMv6-M implementations that do not include the PMSA Extension, accessibility is fixed as part of the memory map. See *The system address map* on page B3-258 and *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv6* on page B3-289 for more details.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A3.6 Access rights

Access rights consist of the following classes:

- rights for data accesses
- rights for instruction prefetching.

Access rights can be restricted to permit only privileged execution. This restriction is useful only in an ARMv6-M implementation that includes the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension.

Instruction or data access violations cause a HardFault exception. When an implementation includes the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension, memory accesses that do not match all access conditions of a region address match, or a default memory map match, generate a fault. MPU registers require privileged memory accesses for reads and writes. Unprivileged accesses generate a HardFault.

See *PMSAv6 MPU operation* on page B3-290 for more information.

A3.6.1 Privilege level access controls for data accesses

The ARM architecture memory attributes can define that a memory region is:

- not accessible to any accesses
- accessible only to privileged accesses
- accessible to privileged and unprivileged accesses.

Note

In an ARMv6-M implementation that does not include the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension, accesses are always privileged.

Not all combinations of memory attributes for reads and writes are supported by all systems that define the memory attributes.

A3.6.2 Privilege level access controls for instruction accesses

The ARM architecture memory attributes can define that a region of memory is:

- not accessible for execution, meaning prefetching from addresses in the region must not occur
- accessible for execution by privileged processes only
- accessible for execution by privileged and unprivileged processes.

Note

In an ARMv6-M implementation that does not include the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension, accesses are always privileged.

A memory region is described, independently, as being:

- accessible for reads by a privileged read access, or by privileged and unprivileged read access
- suitable for execution.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

This means there is a linkage between the memory attributes that define the accessibility to explicit memory accesses, and those that define whether a region can be executed.

If execution is attempted from any memory location that the attributes prohibit, an instruction execution error occurs.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A3.7 Memory access order

The memory types defined in *Memory types and attributes and the memory order model* on page A3-48 have associated memory ordering rules to provide system compatibility for software between different implementations. The rules are defined to accommodate the increasing difficulty of ensuring linkage between the completion of memory accesses and the execution of instructions within a complex high-performance system, while also enabling simple systems and implementations to meet the criteria with predictable behavior.

The memory order model determines:

- when side effects are guaranteed to be visible
- the requirements for memory consistency.

Shareable memory indicating whether a region of memory is shared between multiple processors, and therefore requires an appearance of cache transparency in an ordering model, is supported. Implementations remain free to choose the mechanisms to implement this functionality.

Additional attributes and behaviors relate to the memory system architecture. These features are defined in other areas of this manual, see *Access rights* on page A3-56 and Table B3-1 on page B3-259 for information about access permissions and the system memory map respectively.

More information about the memory order model is given in the following subsections:

- *Reads and writes*
- *Ordering requirements for memory accesses* on page A3-60
- *Memory barriers* on page A3-61.

A3.7.1 Reads and writes

Memory accesses are either reads or writes.

Reads

Reads are defined as memory operations that have the semantics of a load. For ARMv6-M and Thumb these are:

- `LDR{S}B`, `LDR{S}H`, `LDR`
- `LDM`, `POP`

Writes

Writes are defined as operations that have the semantics of a store. For ARMv6-M and Thumb these are:

- `STRB`, `STRH`, `STR`
- `STM`, `PUSH`

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Memory synchronization primitives

Synchronization primitives are required to ensure correct operation of system semaphores within the memory order model.

Synchronization primitive instructions are not supported in ARMv6-M. To implement atomic semaphores, system software must provide the necessary access guarantees, for example by disabling interrupts or executing an appropriate kernel handler.

Observability and completion

The concept of observability applies to all memory, however, the concept of global observability only applies to Shareable memory. Normal, Device and Strongly-ordered memory are defined in *Memory types and attributes and the memory order model* on page A3-48.

For all memory:

- a write to a location in memory is said to be observed by an observer when a subsequent read of the location by the same observer returns the value written by the write
- a write to a location in memory is said to be globally observed for a shareability domain when a subsequent read of the location by any observer within that shareability domain that is capable of observing the write returns the value written by the write
- a read of a location in memory is said to be observed by an observer when a subsequent write to the location by the same observer has no effect on the value returned by the read
- a read of a location in memory is said to be globally observed for a shareability domain when a subsequent write to the location by any observer within that shareability domain that is capable of observing the write has no effect on the value returned by the read.

Additionally, for Strongly-ordered memory:

- A read or write to a memory mapped location in a peripheral that exhibits side-effects is said to be observed, and globally observed, only when the read or write:
  - meets the general conditions listed
  - can begin to affect the state of the memory-mapped peripheral
  - can trigger all associated side effects, whether they affect other peripheral devices, processors, or memory.

For all memory, a read or write is defined to be complete when it is globally observed:

- A branch predictor maintenance operation is defined to be complete when the effects of operation are globally observed.

To determine when any side effects have completed, it is necessary to poll a location associated with the device, for example, a status register.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Side effect completion in Strongly-ordered and Device memory

For all memory-mapped peripherals, where the side-effects of a peripheral are required to be visible to the entire system, the peripheral must provide an IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED location that can be read to determine when all side effects are complete.

This is a key element of the architected memory order model.

A3.7.2 Ordering requirements for memory accesses

ARMv6-M defines access restrictions in the memory ordering permitted, depending on the memory attributes of the accesses involved. Figure A3-6 shows the memory ordering between two explicit accesses A1 and A2, where A1, as listed in the first column, occurs before A2, as listed in the first row, in program order.

The symbols used in Figure A3-6 are as follows:

< Accesses must be globally observed in program order, that is, A1 must be globally observed strictly before A2.

(blank) Accesses can be globally observed in any order, provided that the requirements of uniprocessor semantics, for example respecting dependencies between instructions within a single processor, are maintained.

A1 \ A2	Normal access	Device access		Strongly-ordered access
		Non-shareable	Shareable	
Normal access	-	-	-	-
Device access, Non-shareable	-	<	-	<
Device access, Shareable	-	-	<	<
Strongly-ordered access	-	<	<	<

Figure A3-6 Memory ordering restrictions

There are no ordering requirements for implicit accesses to any type of memory.

Program order for instruction execution

Program order of instruction execution is the order of the instructions in the control flow trace. Explicit memory accesses in an execution can be either:

Strictly Ordered

Denoted by <. Must occur strictly in order.

Ordered

Denoted by <=. Must occur either in order, or simultaneously.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Multiple load and store instructions, such as LDM, POP, STM, and PUSH generate multiple word accesses, each of which is a separate access for the purpose of determining ordering.

The rules for determining program order for two accesses A1 and A2 are:

If A1 and A2 are generated by two different instructions:

- A1 < A2 if the instruction that generates A1 occurs before the instruction that generates A2 in program order
- A2 < A1 if the instruction that generates A2 occurs before the instruction that generates A1 in program order.

If A1 and A2 are generated by the same instruction:

- If A1 and A2 are two word loads generated by an LDM or POP instruction, or two word stores generated by an STM or PUSH instruction, excluding LDM or POP instructions whose register list includes the PC:
  - A1 <= A2 if the address of A1 is less than the address of A2
  - A2 <= A1 if the address of A2 is less than the address of A1.
- If A1 and A2 are two word loads generated by an LDM or POP instruction whose register list includes the PC, the program order of the memory operations is not defined.

A3.7.3 Memory barriers

Memory barrier is the general term applied to an instruction, or sequence of instructions, used to force synchronization events by a processor with respect to retiring load or store instructions. A memory barrier is used to guarantee completion of preceding load or store instructions to the programmers' model, flushing of any prefetched instructions prior to the event, or both. ARMv6-M includes three explicit barrier instructions to support the memory order model.

- DMB, see *Data Memory Barrier (DMB)* on page A3-62
- DSB, see *Data Synchronization Barrier (DSB)* on page A3-62
- ISB, see *Instruction Synchronization Barrier (ISB)* on page A3-62.

Memory barriers affect explicit reads and writes to the memory system generated by load and store instructions being executed in the processor. Reads and writes generated by DMA transactions and instruction fetches are not explicit accesses.

Note

For information on barriers and correctness for system configuration in the M-profile, see *Barrier support for system correctness* on page B2-255.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Data Memory Barrier (DMB)

The DMB instruction is a data memory barrier. DMB exhibits the following behavior:

- All explicit memory accesses by instructions occurring in program order before this instruction are globally observed before any explicit memory accesses because of instructions occurring in program order after this instruction are observed.
- The DMB instruction has no effect on the ordering of other instructions executing on the processor.

As such, DMB ensures the apparent order of the explicit memory operations before and after the instruction, without ensuring their completion. For details on the DMB instruction, see *DMB* on page A6-133.

Data Synchronization Barrier (DSB)

The DSB instruction operation acts as a special kind of DMB. The DSB operation completes when all explicit memory accesses before this instruction complete.

In addition, no instruction subsequent to the DSB can execute until the DSB completes. For details on the DSB instruction, see *DSB* on page A6-134.

Instruction Synchronization Barrier (ISB)

The ISB instruction flushes the pipeline in the processor, so that all instructions following the pipeline flush are fetched from memory after the instruction has been completed. It ensures that the effects of context altering operations, such as branch predictor maintenance operations, in addition to all changes to the special-purpose registers where applicable, executed before the ISB instruction are visible to the instructions fetched after the ISB. See *The special-purpose CONTROL register* on page B1-215 for more information.

In addition, the ISB instruction ensures that any branches that appear in program order after the ISB are always written into the branch prediction logic with the context that is visible after the ISB. This is required to ensure correct execution of the instruction stream.

Any context altering operations appearing in program order after the ISB only take effect after the ISB has been executed. This is because of the behavior of the context altering instructions.

ARM implementations are free to choose how far ahead of the current point of execution they prefetch instructions; either a fixed or a dynamically varying number of instructions. In addition to being free to choose how many instructions to prefetch, an ARM implementation can choose the possible future execution path to prefetch along. For example, after a branch instruction, it can choose to prefetch either the instruction following the branch or the instruction at the branch target. This is known as branch prediction.

A potential problem with all forms of instruction prefetching is that the instruction in memory can be changed after it was prefetched but before it is executed. If this happens, the modification to the instruction in memory does not normally prevent the already prefetched copy of the instruction from executing to completion. Use the ISB and memory barrier instructions, DMB or DSB as appropriate, to force execution ordering where necessary.

For details on the ISB instruction, see *ISB* on page A6-136.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A3.8 Caches and memory hierarchy

Support for caches in ARMv6-M is limited to memory attributes.These can be exported on a supporting bus protocol such as AMBA AHB or AMBA AXI to support system caches.

In situations where a breakdown in coherency can occur, software must manage the caches using cache maintenance operations that are memory mapped and IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

A3.8.1 Introduction to caches

A cache is a block of high-speed memory locations containing both address information and the associated data. The purpose is to increase the average speed of a memory access. Caches operate on two principles of locality:

Spatial locality an access to one location is likely to be followed by accesses from adjacent locations, for example sequential instruction execution or usage of a data structure

Temporal locality an access to an area of memory is likely to be repeated within a short time period, for example execution of a code loop.

To minimize the quantity of control information stored, the spatial locality property is used to group several locations together under the same TAG. This logical block is commonly known as a cache line. When data is loaded into a cache, access times for subsequent loads and stores are reduced, resulting in overall performance benefits. An access to information already in a cache is known as a cache hit, and other accesses are called cache misses.

Normally, caches are self-managing, with the updates occurring automatically. Whenever the processor wants to access a cacheable location, the cache is checked. If the access is a cache hit, the access occurs immediately, otherwise a location is allocated and the cache line loaded from memory. Different cache topologies and access policies are possible, however they must comply with the memory coherency model of the underlying architecture.

Caches introduce a number of potential problems, mainly because of:

- memory accesses occurring at times other than when the programmer would normally expect them
- the existence of multiple physical locations where a data item can be held.

A3.8.2 Implication of caches to the application programmer

Caches are largely invisible to the application programmer, but can become visible because of a breakdown in coherency. Such a breakdown can occur when:

- memory locations are updated by other agents in the systems
- memory updates made from the application code must be made visible to other agents in the system.

For example:

In systems with a DMA that reads memory locations that are held in the data cache of a processor, a breakdown of coherency occurs when the processor has written new data in the data cache, but the DMA reads the old data held in memory.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

In a Harvard architecture of caches, a breakdown of coherency occurs when new instruction data has been written into the data cache or to memory, but the instruction cache still contains the old instruction data.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Chapter A4
The ARMv6-M Instruction Set

This chapter describes the ARMv6-M Thumb instruction set. It contains the following sections:

- *About the instruction set* on page A4-66
- *Unified Assembler Language* on page A4-68
- *Branch instructions* on page A4-70
- *Data-processing instructions* on page A4-71
- *Status register access instructions* on page A4-74
- *Load and store instructions* on page A4-75
- *Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions* on page A4-77
- *Miscellaneous instructions* on page A4-78
- *Exception-generating instructions* on page A4-79.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A4.1 About the instruction set

ARMv6-M supports the Thumb instruction set including a small number of 32-bit instructions introduced with Thumb-2 technology, see *32-bit Thumb instruction encoding* on page A5-91. The 16-bit instruction support is equivalent to the Thumb instruction set support in ARMv6 prior to the introduction of Thumb-2 technology. This chapter describes the functionality available in the ARMv6-M Thumb instruction set, and the UAL that can be assembled to either the Thumb or ARM instruction sets.

Thumb instructions are either 16-bit or 32-bit, and are aligned on a two-byte boundary. 16-bit and 32-bit instructions can be intermixed freely. However:

- Most 16-bit instructions can only access eight of the general purpose registers, R0-R7. These are known as the low registers.
- A small number of 16-bit instructions can access the high registers, R8-R15.

The ARM and Thumb instruction sets are designed to *interwork* freely. Because ARMv6-M only supports Thumb instructions, interworking instructions in ARMv6-M must only reference Thumb state execution, see *ARMv6-M and interworking support* for more details.

In addition, see:

- Chapter A5 *The Thumb Instruction Set Encoding* for encoding details of the Thumb instruction set
- Chapter A6 *Thumb Instruction Details* for detailed descriptions of the instructions.

A4.1.1 ARMv6-M and interworking support

Thumb interworking is held as bit [0] of an *interworking address*. Interworking addresses are used in the following instructions: `BX`, `BLX`, or `POP` that loads the PC.

ARMv6-M only supports the Thumb instruction execution state, therefore the value of address bit [0] must be 1 in interworking instructions, otherwise a fault occurs. All instructions ignore bit [0] and write bits [31:1]:'0' when updating the PC.

16-bit instructions that update the PC behave as follows:

- `ADD` (register) and `MOV` (register) branch within Thumb state without interworking

  Note

  The use of Rd as the PC in the `ADD` (SP plus register) 16-bit instruction is deprecated.

- `B`, or the `B<c>` instruction, branches without interworking
- `BLX` (register) and `BX` interwork on the value in Rm
- `POP` interworks on the value loaded to the PC
- `BKPT` and `SVC` cause exceptions and are not considered to be interworking instructions.

For more details, see the description of the `BXWritePC()` function in *Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations* on page A2-36.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

The 32-bit `BL` instruction branches to Thumb state based on the instruction encoding and is not based on bit [0] of the value written to the PC. It is the only 32-bit instruction in ARMv6-M that updates the PC.

A4.1.2 Conditional execution

Conditionally executed means that the instruction only has its normal effect on the programmers' model operation and memory if the N, Z, C and V flags in the APSR satisfy a condition specified in the instruction. If the flags do not satisfy this condition, the instruction acts as a NOP, that is, execution advances to the next instruction as normal, including any relevant checks for exceptions being taken, but has no other effect.

Conditional execution in ARMv6-M can only be achieved using a 16-bit conditional branch instruction, with a branch range of –256 to +254 bytes. See *B* on page A6-119 for details.

See *Conditional execution* on page A6-99 for more information about conditional execution.

Note

The Thumb instruction set in other architecture variants supports additional conditional execution capabilities:

- a 32-bit conditional branch with a larger branch range
- a Compare and Branch on Zero and a Compare and Branch on Nonzero instructions,
- an If-Then (`IT`) instruction.

These instructions are not supported in ARMv6-M.

A4.1.3 Permanently UNDEFINED encodings

All versions of the ARM architecture define some encodings as permanently UNDEFINED. That is, permanently UNDEFINED encodings are defined in the 16-bit and 32-bit Thumb encodings. From issue C of this manual, ARM defines an assembler mnemonic for these instructions, see *UDF* on page A6-193.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A4.2 Unified Assembler Language

This document uses the ARM UAL. This assembly language syntax provides a canonical form for all ARM and Thumb instructions. ARM Limited recommends the use of UAL for flexibility and maximum portability across all ARM architecture variants.

UAL describes the syntax for the mnemonic and the operands of each instruction. In addition, it assumes that instructions and data items can be given labels. It does not specify the syntax to be used for labels, nor what assembler directives and options are available. See your assembler documentation for these details.

Note

Most earlier Thumb assembly language mnemonics are *not* supported. See Appendix D *Legacy Instruction Mnemonics* for details.

UAL includes *instruction selection* rules that specify the instruction encoding that is selected when more than one can provide the required functionality.

Syntax options exist to ensure that a particular encoding is selected. These are useful when disassembling code, to ensure that subsequent assembly produces the original code, and in some other situations.

ARMv6-M only supports a single width of instruction for any given mnemonic. This makes the selection syntax valid but less relevant in the ARMv6-M case. The selection syntax might be useful for code sharing cases with other architecture variants.

A4.2.1 Use of labels in UAL instruction syntax

The UAL syntax for some instructions includes the label of an instruction or a literal data item that is at a fixed offset from the instruction being specified. The assembler must:

1. Calculate the `PC` or `Align(PC,4)` value of the instruction. The `PC` value of an instruction is its address plus 4 for a Thumb instruction, or plus 8 for an ARM instruction. The `Align(PC,4)` value of an instruction is its `PC` value ANDed with `0xFFFFFFFC` to force it to be word-aligned. There is no difference between the `PC` and `Align(PC,4)` values for an ARM instruction, but there can be for a Thumb instruction.
2. Calculate the offset from the `PC` or `Align(PC,4)` value of the instruction to the address of the labelled instruction or literal data item.
3. Assemble a *PC-relative* encoding of the instruction, that is, one that reads its `PC` or `Align(PC,4)` value and adds the calculated offset to form the required address.

   Note

   For instructions that encode a subtraction operation, if the instruction cannot encode the calculated offset, but can encode minus the calculated offset, the instruction encoding specifies a subtraction of minus the calculated offset.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

The syntax of the following instructions includes a label:

- `B` and `BL`. The assembler syntax for these instructions always specifies the label of the instruction that they branch to. Their encodings specify a sign-extended immediate offset that is added to the `PC` value of the instruction to form the target address of the branch.
- The assembler syntax of the `LDR` instruction can specify the label of a literal data item that is to be loaded. The encoding of the instruction specifies a zero-extended immediate offset that is added to the `Align(PC,4)` value of the instruction to form the address of the data item.
- `ADR`. The assembler syntax for this instruction can specify the label of an instruction or literal data item whose address is to be calculated. Its encoding specifies a zero-extended immediate offset that is added to the `Align(PC,4)` value of the instruction to form the address of the data item.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A4.3 Branch instructions

Table A4-1 summarizes the branch instructions supported in the ARMv6-M Thumb instruction set.

Table A4-1 Branch instructions

Instruction	Usage	Range
B on page A6-119	Branch to target address	+/–2KB
BL on page A6-123	Call a subroutine	+/–16MB
BLX (register) on page A6-124	Call a subroutine[a]	Any
BX on page A6-125	Branch to target address[a]	Any

a. In ARMv6-M, the interworking address must maintain Thumb execution state, otherwise a fault occurs.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A4.4 Data-processing instructions

Core data-processing instructions belong to one of the following groups:

- *Standard data-processing instructions*. This group perform basic data-processing operations, and share a common format with some variations.
- *Shift instructions* on page A4-72.
- *Multiply instructions* on page A4-73.
- *Packing and unpacking instructions* on page A4-73.
- *Miscellaneous data-processing instructions* on page A4-73.

A4.4.1 Standard data-processing instructions

These instructions generally have a destination register Rd, a first operand register Rn, and a second operand Rm.

In addition to placing a result in the destination register, most of these instructions set the condition code flags, according to the result of the operation. If an instruction does not set a flag, the existing value of that flag, from a previous instruction, is preserved.

Table A4-2 summarizes the main data-processing instructions in the Thumb instruction set. The instructions are classified and described as applicable in two sections in Chapter A6 *Thumb Instruction Details*, one section for each of the following:

- `INSTRUCTION` (immediate) where the second operand is a modified immediate constant.
- `INSTRUCTION` (register) where the second operand is a register, or a register shifted by a constant.

Table A4-2 Standard data-processing instructions

Mnemonic	Instruction	Notes
`ADC`	Add with Carry	-
`ADD`	Add	ARMv6-M provides register and small immediate versions only.
`ADR`	Form PC-relative Address	First operand is the PC. Second operand is an immediate constant.
`AND`	Bitwise AND	-
`BIC`	Bitwise Bit Clear	-
`CMN`	Compare Negative	Sets flags. Like `ADD` but with no destination register.
`CMP`	Compare	Sets flags. Like `SUB` but with no destination register.
`EOR`	Bitwise Exclusive OR	-

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table A4-2 Standard data-processing instructions (continued)

Mnemonic	Instruction	Notes
MOV	Copies operand to destination	Has only one operand. Constant support is limited to loading an 8-bit immediate value in ARMv6-M. If the operand is a shifted register, the instruction is an LSL, LSR, ASR, or ROR instruction instead. See *Shift instructions* for details.
MVN	Bitwise NOT	Has only one operand. ARMv6-M does not support any immediate or shift options.
ORR	Bitwise OR	-
RSB	Reverse Subtract	Subtracts first operand from second operand. ARMv6-M only supports an immediate value of 0.
SBC	Subtract with Carry	-
SUB	Subtract	-
TST	Test	Sets flags. Like AND but with no destination register.

A4.4.2 Shift instructions

Table A4-3 lists the shift instructions in the Thumb instruction set.

Table A4-3 Shift instructions

Instruction[a]	See
Arithmetic Shift Right	*ASR (immediate)* on page A6-117
Arithmetic Shift Right	*ASR (register)* on page A6-118
Logical Shift Left	*LSL (immediate)* on page A6-150
Logical Shift Left	*LSL (register)* on page A6-151
Logical Shift Right	*LSR (immediate)* on page A6-152
Logical Shift Right	*LSR (register)* on page A6-153
Rotate Right	*ROR (register)* on page A6-171

a. ARMv6-M does not support RRX, Rotate Right with Extend.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A4.4.3 Multiply instructions

The only multiply instruction supported in ARMv6-M performs a 32x32 multiply that generates a 32-bit result, see *MUL* on page A6-159. The instruction can operate on signed or unsigned quantities.

A4.4.4 Packing and unpacking instructions

Table A4-4 lists the packing and upacking instructions in the Thumb instruction set.

Table A4-4 Packing and unpacking instructions

Instruction	See	Operation
Signed Extend Byte	*SXTB* on page A6-190	Extend 8 bits to 32
Signed Extend Halfword	*SXTH* on page A6-191	Extend 16 bits to 32
Unsigned Extend Byte	*UXTB* on page A6-195	Extend 8 bits to 32
Unsigned Extend Halfword	*UXTH* on page A6-196	Extend 16 bits to 32

A4.4.5 Miscellaneous data-processing instructions

Table A4-5 lists the miscellaneous data-processing instructions in the Thumb instruction set. Immediate values in these instructions are simple binary numbers.

Table A4-5 Miscellaneous data-processing instructions

Instruction	See	Notes
Byte-Reverse Word	*REV* on page A6-168	-
Byte-Reverse Packed Halfword	*REV16* on page A6-169	-
Byte-Reverse Signed Halfword	*REVSH* on page A6-170	-

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A4.5 Status register access instructions

The MRS and MSR instructions move the contents of the *Application Program Status Register*, APSR, to or from a general-purpose register.

The APSR is described in *The Application Program Status Register* on page A2-38.

The condition flags in the APSR are normally set by executing data-processing instructions, and are normally used to control the execution of conditional branch instructions. However, you can set the flags explicitly using the MSR instruction, and you can read the current state of the flags explicitly using the MRS instruction.

For details of the system level use of status register access instructions, see Chapter B4 *ARMv6-M System Instructions*.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A4.6 Load and store instructions

Table A4-6 summarizes the general-purpose register load and store instructions in the Thumb instruction set. See also *Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions* on page A4-77.

Load and store instructions have several options for addressing memory. See *Addressing modes* on page A4-76 for more information.

Table A4-6 Load and store instructions

Data type	Load	Store
32-bit word	LDR	STR
16-bit halfword	-	STRH
16-bit unsigned halfword	LDRH	-
16-bit signed halfword	LDRSH	-
8-bit byte	-	STRB
8-bit unsigned byte	LDRB	-
8-bit signed byte	LDRSB	-

A4.6.1 Halfword and byte loads and stores

Halfword and byte stores store the least significant halfword or byte from the register, to 16 or 8 bits of memory respectively. There is no distinction between signed and unsigned stores.

Halfword and byte loads load 16 or 8 bits from memory into the least significant halfword or byte of a register. Unsigned loads zero-extend the loaded value to 32 bits, and signed loads sign-extend the value to 32 bits.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A4.6.2 Addressing modes

The address for a load or store is formed from two parts: a value from a base register, and an offset.

In ARMv6-M, the base register is one of the R0-R7, SP or PC general-purpose registers.

For loads, the base register can be the PC. This permits PC-relative addressing for position-independent code. Instructions marked (literal) in their title in Chapter A6 *Thumb Instruction Details* are PC-relative loads.

In ARMv6-M, the address offset takes one of two formats:

Immediate The offset is an unsigned number that can be added to or subtracted from the base register value. Immediate offset addressing is useful for accessing data elements that are a fixed distance from the start of the data object, such as structure fields, stack offsets and input/output registers.

Register The offset is a value from a general-purpose register. This register cannot be the PC. The value can be added to, or subtracted from, the base register value. Register offsets are useful for accessing arrays or blocks of data.

For more information on address mode support in ARMv6-M, see *Memory accesses* on page A6-103.

Note

Support for one or both formats and the range of permitted immediate values is instruction encoding dependent. See Chapter A6 *Thumb Instruction Details* for full details for each instruction.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A4.7 Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions

Load Multiple instructions load a subset of the general-purpose registers from memory.

Store Multiple instructions store a subset of the general-purpose registers to memory.

The memory locations are consecutive word-aligned words. The addresses used are obtained from a base register, and are either above or below the value in the base register. The base register can be updated by the total size of the data transferred. See the appropriate instruction behavior for exact details.

Table A4-7 summarizes the ARMv6-M Thumb Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions.

Table A4-7 Load Multiple and Store Multiple instructions

Instruction	Description
Load Multiple, Increment After or Full Descending	*LDM, LDMIA, LDMFD* on page A6-137
Pop multiple registers off the stack	*POP* on page A6-165
Push multiple registers onto the stack [a]	*PUSH* on page A6-167
Store Multiple, Increment After or Empty Ascending	*STM, STMIA, STMEA* on page A6-175

a. This instruction decrements the base register before the memory access and updates the base register.

A4.7.1 Loads to the PC

The `POP` instruction can be used to load a value into the PC. The value loaded is treated as an interworking address, as described by the `LoadWritePC()` pseudocode function in *Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations* on page A2-36.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A4.8 Miscellaneous instructions

Table A4-8 summarizes the miscellaneous instructions in the ARMv6-M Thumb instruction set.

Table A4-8 Miscellaneous instructions

Instruction	See
Data Memory Barrier	*DMB* on page A6-133
Data Synchronization Barrier	*DSB* on page A6-134
Instruction Synchronization Barrier	*ISB* on page A6-136
No Operation	*NOP* on page A6-163
Send Event	*SEV* on page A6-174
Supervisor Call	*SVC* on page A6-189
Wait for Event	*WFE* on page A6-197
Wait for Interrupt	*WFI* on page A6-198
Yield	*YIELD* on page A6-199

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A4.9 Exception-generating instructions

The following instructions are intended specifically to cause a processor exception to occur:

- The Supervisor Call `SVC`, formerly `SWI`, instruction is used to cause an SVCall exception to occur. This is the main mechanism in the ARM architecture for unprivileged code to make calls to privileged Operating System code. See *ARMv6-M exception model* on page B1-218 for details.

  Note

  In an ARMv6-M implementation that does not include the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension, execution is always privileged. However in such an implementation, application code might use supervisor calls to maintain a software hierarchy with a system kernel.

- The Breakpoint (`BKPT`) instruction provides for software breakpoints. It can cause a running system to halt depending on the debug configuration. See *Debug event behavior* on page C1-324 for more details.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Chapter A5
The Thumb Instruction Set Encoding

This chapter describes how the Thumb instruction set uses the ARM programmers' model. It contains the following sections:

- *Thumb instruction set encoding* on page A5-82
- *16-bit Thumb instruction encoding* on page A5-84
- *32-bit Thumb instruction encoding* on page A5-91.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A5.1 Thumb instruction set encoding

The Thumb instruction stream is a sequence of halfword-aligned halfwords. Each Thumb instruction is either a single 16-bit halfword in that stream, or a 32-bit instruction consisting of two consecutive halfwords in that stream.

If bits [15:11] of the halfword being decoded take any of the following values, the halfword is the first halfword of a 32-bit instruction:

- `0b11101`
- `0b11110`
- `0b11111`.

Otherwise, the halfword is a 16-bit instruction.

See *16-bit Thumb instruction encoding* on page A5-84 for details of the encoding of 16-bit Thumb instructions.

See *32-bit Thumb instruction encoding* on page A5-91 for details of the encoding of 32-bit Thumb instructions.

A5.1.1 UNDEFINED and UNPREDICTABLE instruction set space

An attempt to execute an unallocated instruction results in either:

- Unpredictable behavior. The instruction is described as UNPREDICTABLE.
- An Undefined Instruction exception. The instruction is described as UNDEFINED.

An instruction is UNDEFINED if it is declared as UNDEFINED in an instruction description, or in this chapter.

An instruction is UNPREDICTABLE if:

- a bit marked (0) or (1) in the encoding diagram of an instruction is not 0 or 1 respectively, and the pseudocode for that encoding does not indicate that a different special case applies
- it is declared as UNPREDICTABLE in an instruction description or in this chapter.

Unless otherwise specified, Thumb instructions present in other architecture variants are UNDEFINED in ARMv6-M.

A5.1.2 Use of 0b1111 as a register specifier

The use of `0b1111` as a register specifier is not normally permitted in Thumb instructions. When a value of `0b1111` is permitted, a variety of meanings is possible. For register reads, these meanings are:

- Read the PC value, that is, the address of the current instruction + 4. Some instructions read the PC value implicitly, without the use of a register specifier, for example the conditional branch instruction `B<c>`.
- Read the word-aligned PC value, that is, the address of the current instruction + 4, with bits [1:0] forced to zero. This enables instructions such as `ADR` and `LDR` (literal) instructions to use PC-relative data addressing. The register specifier is implicit in the ARMv6-M encodings of these instructions.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

For register writes, these meanings are:

- The PC can be specified as the destination register of an instruction. Thumb interworking defines whether bit [0] of the address is ignored or determines the instruction execution state. If it selects the execution state after the branch, bit [0] must have the value 1.

  Instructions can write the PC either implicitly, for example, `B<cond>`, or by using a register mask rather than a register specifier (`POP`). The address to branch to can be a loaded value such as `POP`, a register value, such as `BX`, or the result of a calculation, such as `ADD`.

- Discard the result of a calculation. This is done in some cases when one instruction is a special case of another, more general instruction, but with the result discarded. In these cases, the instructions are listed on separate pages, with a special case in the pseudocode for the more general instruction cross-referencing the other page. This use does not apply to ARMv6-M encodings.

A5.1.3 Use of 0b1101 as a register specifier

R13 is defined in the Thumb instruction set so that its use is primarily as a stack pointer, aligning R13 with the *ARM Architecture Procedure Call Standard* (AAPCS), the architecture usage model supported by the `PUSH` and `POP` instructions.

R13<1:0> definition

Bits [1:0] of R13 are treated as *Should Be Zero or Preserved* (SBZP). Writing a non-zero value to bits [1:0] results in UNPREDICTABLE behavior. Reading bits [1:0] returns zero.

R13 instruction support

R13 instruction support in ARMv6-M is restricted to the following:

- R13 as the source or destination register of a `MOV (register)` instruction:

  ```
  MOV     SP,Rm
  MOV     Rd,SP
  ```

- Adjusting R13 up or down by a multiple of its alignment:

  ```
  SUB (SP minus immediate)
  ADD (SP plus immediate)
  ADD (SP plus register)     // where Rm is a multiple of 4
  ```

- R13 as the first operand `<Rm>` in an `ADD (SP plus register)` where Rd is not the SP.

- R13 as the first operand `<Rn>` in a `CMP (register)` instruction. `CMP` can be useful for stack checking.

- R13 as the address in a `POP` or `PUSH` instruction.

The restrictions affect:

- the high register form of `ADD` (register) and `CMP` (register), where the use of R13 as `<Rm>` is deprecated
- the `ADD (SP plus register)` where Rd == 13 and Rm is not word-aligned.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A5.2 16-bit Thumb instruction encoding

The encoding of 16-bit Thumb instructions is:

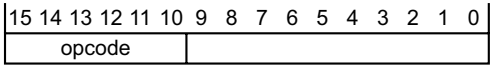


Table A5-1 shows the allocation of 16-bit instruction encodings.

Table A5-1 16-bit Thumb instruction encoding

opcode	Instruction or instruction class
00xxxx	*Shift (immediate), add, subtract, move, and compare* on page A5-85
010000	*Data processing* on page A5-86
010001	*Special data instructions and branch and exchange* on page A5-87
01001x	Load from Literal Pool, see *LDR (literal)* on page A6-141
0101xx 011xxx 100xxx	*Load/store single data item* on page A5-88
10100x	Generate PC-relative address, see *ADR* on page A6-115
10101x	Generate SP-relative address, see *ADD (SP plus immediate)* on page A6-111
1011xx	*Miscellaneous 16-bit instructions* on page A5-89
11000x	Store multiple registers, see *STM, STMIA, STMEA* on page A6-175
11001x	Load multiple registers, see *LDM, LDMIA, LDMFD* on page A6-137
1101xx	*Conditional branch, and Supervisor Call* on page A5-90
11100x	Unconditional Branch, see *B* on page A6-119

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A5.2.1 Shift (immediate), add, subtract, move, and compare

The encoding of Shift (immediate), add, subtract, move, and compare instructions is:

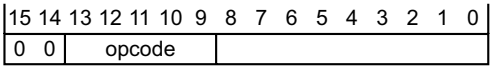


Table A5-2 shows the allocation of encodings in this space.

Table A5-2 16-bit Thumb encoding

opcode	Instruction	See
000xx	Logical Shift Left[a]	*LSL (immediate)* on page A6-150
001xx	Logical Shift Right	*LSR (immediate)* on page A6-152
010xx	Arithmetic Shift Right	*ASR (immediate)* on page A6-117
01100	Add register	*ADD (register)* on page A6-109
01101	Subtract register	*SUB (register)* on page A6-187
01110	Add 3-bit immediate	*ADD (immediate)* on page A6-107
01111	Subtract 3-bit immediate	*SUB (immediate)* on page A6-185
100xx	Move	*MOV (immediate)* on page A6-154
101xx	Compare	*CMP (immediate)* on page A6-127
110xx	Add 8-bit immediate	*ADD (immediate)* on page A6-107
111xx	Subtract 8-bit immediate	*SUB (immediate)* on page A6-185

a. When opcode is `0b00000`, and bits[8:6] are `0b000`, this encoding is `MOV` (register), see *MOV (register)* on page A6-155.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A5.2.2 Data processing

The encoding of data processing instructions is:

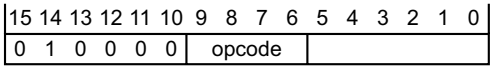


Table A5-3 shows the allocation of encodings in this space.

Table A5-3 16-bit Thumb data processing instructions

opcode	Instruction	See
0000	Bitwise AND	*AND (register)* on page A6-116
0001	Exclusive OR	*EOR (register)* on page A6-135
0010	Logical Shift Left	*LSL (register)* on page A6-151
0011	Logical Shift Right	*LSR (register)* on page A6-153
0100	Arithmetic Shift Right	*ASR (register)* on page A6-118
0101	Add with Carry	*ADC (register)* on page A6-106
0110	Subtract with Carry	*SBC (register)* on page A6-173
0111	Rotate Right	*ROR (register)* on page A6-171
1000	Set flags on bitwise AND	*TST (register)* on page A6-192
1001	Reverse Subtract from 0	*RSB (immediate)* on page A6-172
1010	Compare Registers	*CMP (register)* on page A6-129
1011	Compare Negative	*CMN (register)* on page A6-126
1100	Logical OR	*ORR (register)* on page A6-164
1101	Multiply Two Registers	*MUL* on page A6-159
1110	Bit Clear	*BIC (register)* on page A6-121
1111	Bitwise NOT	*MVN (register)* on page A6-161

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A5.2.3 Special data instructions and branch and exchange

The encoding of special data instructions, and branch and exchange instructions, is:

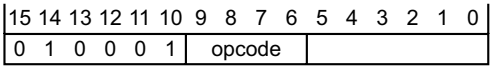


Table A5-4 shows the allocation of encodings in this space.

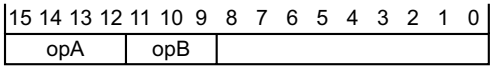
Table A5-4 Special data instructions and branch and exchange

opcode	Instruction	See
00xx	Add Registers	*ADD (register)* on page A6-109
0100	UNPREDICTABLE	-
0101 011x	Compare Registers	*CMP (register)* on page A6-129
10xx	Move Registers	*MOV (register)* on page A6-155
110x	Branch and Exchange	*BX* on page A6-125
111x	Branch with Link and Exchange	*BLX (register)* on page A6-124

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A5.2.4 Load/store single data item

The encoding of Load/store single data item instructions is:



These instructions have one of the following values in opA:

- `0b0101`
- `0b011x`
- `0b100x`.

Table A5-5 shows the allocation of encodings in this space.

Table A5-5 16-bit Thumb Load and store instructions

opA	opB	Instruction	See
0101	000	Store Register	*STR (register)* on page A6-179
0101	001	Store Register Halfword	*STRH (register)* on page A6-183
0101	010	Store Register Byte	*STRB (register)* on page A6-181
0101	011	Load Register Signed Byte	*LDRSB (register)* on page A6-148
0101	100	Load Register	*LDR (register)* on page A6-143
0101	101	Load Register Halfword	*LDRH (register)* on page A6-147
0101	110	Load Register Byte	*LDRB (register)* on page A6-145
0101	111	Load Register Signed Halfword	*LDRSH (register)* on page A6-149
0110	0xx	Store Register	*STR (immediate)* on page A6-177
0110	1xx	Load Register	*LDR (immediate)* on page A6-139
0111	0xx	Store Register Byte	*STRB (immediate)* on page A6-180
0111	1xx	Load Register Byte	*LDRB (immediate)* on page A6-144
1000	0xx	Store Register Halfword	*STRH (immediate)* on page A6-182
1000	1xx	Load Register Halfword	*LDRH (immediate)* on page A6-146
1001	0xx	Store Register SP relative	*STR (immediate)* on page A6-177
1001	1xx	Load Register SP relative	*LDR (immediate)* on page A6-139

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A5.2.5 Miscellaneous 16-bit instructions

The encoding of miscellaneous 16-bit instructions is:

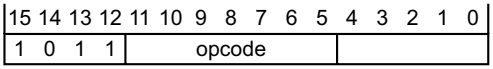


Table A5-6 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-6 Miscellaneous 16-bit instructions

opcode	Instruction	See
00000xx	Add Immediate to SP	*ADD (SP plus immediate)* on page A6-111
00001xx	Subtract Immediate from SP	*SUB (SP minus immediate)* on page A6-188
001000x	Signed Extend Halfword	*SXTH* on page A6-191
001001x	Signed Extend Byte	*SXTB* on page A6-190
001010x	Unsigned Extend Halfword	*UXTH* on page A6-196
001011x	Unsigned Extend Byte	*UXTB* on page A6-195
010xxxx	Push Multiple Registers	*PUSH* on page A6-167
0110011	Change Processor State	*CPS* on page B4-306
101000x	Byte-Reverse Word	*REV* on page A6-168
101001x	Byte-Reverse Packed Halfword	*REV16* on page A6-169
101011x	Byte-Reverse Signed Halfword	*REVSH* on page A6-170
110xxxx	Pop Multiple Registers	*POP* on page A6-165
1110xxx	Breakpoint	*BKPT* on page A6-122
1111xxx	Hints	*Hint instructions* on page A5-90

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Hint instructions

The encoding of hint instructions is:

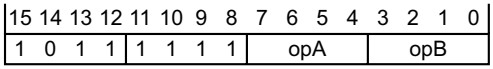


Table A5-7 shows the allocation of encodings in this space.

Other encodings in this space are unallocated hints. They execute as NOPs, but software must not use them.

Table A5-7 Hint instructions

opA	opB	Instruction	See
xxxx	not 0000	UNDEFINED[a]	-
0000	0000	No Operation hint	*NOP* on page A6-163
0001	0000	Yield hint	*YIELD* on page A6-199
0010	0000	Wait for Event hint	*WFE* on page A6-197
0011	0000	Wait for Interrupt hint	*WFI* on page A6-198
0100	0000	Send Event hint	*SEV* on page A6-174

a. The If-Then (IT) instruction is not supported in ARMv6-M. The encoding space is UNDEFINED.

A5.2.6 Conditional branch, and Supervisor Call

The encoding of 16-bit Thumb conditional branch and Supervisor Call instructions is:

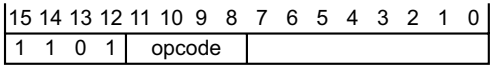


Table A5-8 shows the allocation of encodings in this space.

Table A5-8 Conditional branch and Supervisor Call instructions

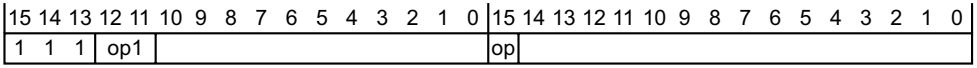
opcode	Instruction	See
not 111x	Conditional branch	*B* on page A6-119
1110	Permanently UNDEFINED	*UDF* on page A6-193[a]
1111	Supervisor Call	*SVC* on page A6-189

a. Issue C of this manual first defines an assembler mnemonic for these encodings

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A5.3 32-bit Thumb instruction encoding

The encoding of 32-bit Thumb instructions is:



For 32-bit Thumb encoding, op1 != `0b00`. If op1 == `0b00`, a 16-bit instruction is encoded, see *16-bit Thumb instruction encoding* on page A5-84.

Table A5-9 shows the allocation of ARMv6-M Thumb encodings in this space.

Table A5-9 32-bit Thumb encoding

op1	op	Instruction class
x1	x	UNDEFINED
10	1	See *Branch and miscellaneous control*
10	0	UNDEFINED

A5.3.1 Branch and miscellaneous control

The encoding of branch and miscellaneous control instructions is:

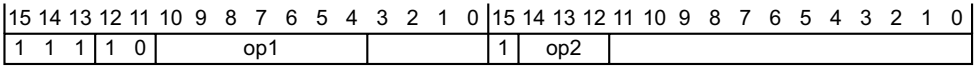


Table A5-10 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED.

Table A5-10 Branch and miscellaneous control instructions

op2	op1	Instruction	See
0x0	011100x	Move to Special Register	*MSR (register)* on page B4-310
0x0	0111011	-	*Miscellaneous control instructions* on page A5-92
0x0	011111x	Move from Special Register	*MRS* on page B4-308
010	1111111	Permanently UNDEFINED	*UDF* on page A6-193
1x1	-	Branch with Link	*BL* on page A6-123

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Miscellaneous control instructions

The encoding of miscellaneous control instructions is:

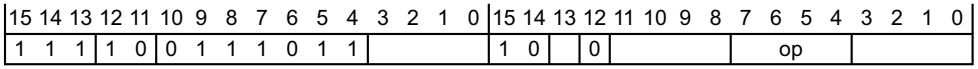


Table A5-11 shows the allocation of encodings in this space. Other encodings in this space are UNDEFINED in ARMv6-M.

Table A5-11 Miscellaneous control instructions

op	Instruction	See
0100	Data Synchronization Barrier	*DSB* on page A6-134
0101	Data Memory Barrier	*DMB* on page A6-133
0110	Instruction Synchronization Barrier	*ISB* on page A6-136

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Chapter A6
Thumb Instruction Details

This chapter describes each instruction in the ARMv6-M Thumb instruction set. It contains the following sections:

- *Format of instruction descriptions* on page A6-94
- *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98
- *Conditional execution* on page A6-99
- *Shifts applied to a register* on page A6-101
- *Memory accesses* on page A6-103
- *Hint Instructions* on page A6-104
- *Alphabetical list of ARMv6-M Thumb instructions* on page A6-105.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.1 Format of instruction descriptions

The instruction descriptions in the alphabetical lists of instructions in *Alphabetical list of ARMv6-M Thumb instructions* on page A6-105 normally use the following format:

- instruction section title
- introduction to the instruction
- instruction encoding(s) with architecture information
- assembler syntax
- pseudocode describing how the instruction operates
- exception information
- notes, where applicable.

Each of these items is described in more detail in the following subsections.

A few instruction descriptions describe alternative mnemonics for other instructions and use an abbreviated and modified version of this format.

A6.1.1 Instruction section title

The instruction section title gives the base mnemonic for the instructions described in the section. When one mnemonic has multiple forms described in separate instruction sections, this is followed by a short description of the form in parentheses. The most common use of this is to distinguish between forms of an instruction in which one of the operands is an immediate value and forms in which it is a register.

Parenthesized text is also used to document the former mnemonic in some cases where a mnemonic has been replaced entirely by another mnemonic in the new assembler syntax.

A6.1.2 Introduction to the instruction

The instruction section title is followed by text that briefly describes the main features of the instruction. This description is not necessarily complete and is not definitive. If there is any conflict between it and the more detailed information that follows, the latter takes priority.

A6.1.3 Instruction encodings

The *Encodings* subsection contains a list of one or more instruction encodings. For reference purposes, each Thumb instruction encoding is labelled, T1, T2, T3...

Each instruction encoding description consists of:

- Information about which architecture variants include the particular encoding of the instruction. Thumb instructions present since ARMv4T are labelled as *all versions of the Thumb instruction set*, otherwise:
  - — ARMv5T* means all variants of ARM Architecture version 5 that include Thumb instruction support.
  - — ARMv6-M means a Thumb-only variant of the ARM architecture microcontroller profile that is compatible with ARMv6 Thumb support prior to the introduction of Thumb-2 technology.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

— ARMv7-M means a Thumb-only variant of the ARM architecture microcontroller profile that provides enhanced performance and functionality compared to ARMv6-M, through the use of Thumb-2 technology and additional system features such as fault handling support.

Note

This manual does not provide architecture variant information about non-M profile variants of ARMv6 and ARMv7. For such information, see the *ARM Architecture Reference Manual, ARMv7-A and ARMv7-R edition.*

- An assembly syntax that ensures that the assembler selects the encoding in preference to any other encoding. In some cases, multiple syntaxes are given. The correct one to use is sometimes indicated by annotations to the syntax. In other cases, the correct one to use can be determined by looking at the assembler syntax description and using it to determine which syntax corresponds to the instruction being disassembled.

  There can be more than one syntax that ensures re-assembly to any particular encoding, and the exact set of syntaxes that do so usually depends on the register numbers, immediate constants and other operands to the instruction.

  The assembly syntax documented for the encoding is chosen to be the simplest one that ensures selection of that encoding for all operand combinations supported by that encoding.

  The assembly syntax given for an encoding is therefore a suitable one for a disassembler to disassemble that encoding to. However, disassemblers might want to use simpler syntaxes when they are suitable for the operand combination, to produce more readable disassembled code.

- An encoding diagram. This is half-width for 16-bit Thumb encodings and full-width for 32-bit Thumb encodings. The 32-bit Thumb encodings use a double vertical line between the two halfwords to act as a reminder that 32-bit Thumb encodings use the byte order of a sequence of two halfwords rather than of a word, as described in *Instruction alignment and byte ordering* on page A3-46.

- Encoding-specific pseudocode. This is pseudocode that translates the encoding-specific instruction fields into inputs to the encoding-independent pseudocode in the later *Operation* subsection, and that picks out any special cases in the encoding. For a detailed description of the pseudocode used and of the relationship between the encoding diagram, the encoding-specific pseudocode and the encoding-independent pseudocode, see Appendix E *Pseudocode Definition*.

A6.1.4 Assembler syntax

The *Assembly syntax* subsection describes the standard UAL syntax for the instruction.

Each syntax description consists of the following elements:

- One or more syntax prototype lines written in a typewriter font, using the conventions described in *Assembler syntax prototype line conventions* on page A6-96. Each prototype line documents the mnemonic and, where appropriate, operand parts of a full line of assembler code. When there is more than one such line, each prototype line is annotated to indicate required results of the encoding-specific pseudocode. For each instruction encoding, this information can be used to determine whether any instructions matching that encoding are available when assembling that syntax, and if so, which ones.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

- The line *where:* followed by descriptions of all of the variable or optional fields of the prototype syntax line.

  Some syntax fields are standardized across all or most instructions. These fields are described in *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

  By default, syntax fields that specify registers, such as <Rd>, <Rn>, or <Rt>, are permitted to be any of R0-R12 or LR in Thumb instructions. These require that the encoding-specific pseudocode sets the corresponding integer variable, such as d, n, or t, to the corresponding register number, that is, 0-12 for R0-R12, or 14 for LR. This can normally be done by setting the corresponding bitfield in the instruction, named Rd, Rn, Rt..., to the binary encoding of that number. In the case of 16-bit Thumb encodings, this bitfield is normally of length 3 and so the encoding is only available when one of R0-R7 was specified in the assembler syntax. It is also common for such encodings to use a bitfield name such as Rdn. This indicates that the encoding is only available if <Rd> and <Rn> specify the same register, and that the register number of that register is encoded in the bitfield if they do.

  The description of a syntax field that specifies a register sometimes extends or restricts the permitted range of registers or documents other differences from the default rules for such fields. Typical extensions are to permit the use of one or both of the SP and the PC, using register numbers 13 and 15 respectively.

Note

The pre-UAL Thumb assembler syntax is incompatible with UAL and is not documented in the instruction sections, see Appendix D *Legacy Instruction Mnemonics*.

Assembler syntax prototype line conventions

The following conventions are used in assembler syntax prototype lines and their subfields:

`< >` Any item bracketed by < and > is a short description of a type of value to be supplied by the user in that position. A longer description of the item is normally supplied by subsequent text. Such items often correspond to a similarly named field in an encoding diagram for an instruction. When the correspondence requires the binary encoding of an integer value or register number to be substituted into the instruction encoding, it is not described explicitly. For example, if the assembler syntax for a Thumb instruction contains an item <Rn> and the instruction encoding diagram contains a 4-bit field named Rn, the number of the register specified in the assembler syntax is encoded in binary in the instruction field.

If the correspondence between the assembler syntax item and the instruction encoding is more complex than simple binary encoding of an integer or register number, the item description indicates how it is encoded. This is often done by specifying a required output from the encoding-specific pseudocode, such as add = TRUE. The assembler must only use encodings that produce that output.

`{ }` Any item bracketed by { and } is optional. A description of the item and of how its presence or absence is encoded in the instruction is normally supplied by subsequent text.

Many instructions have an optional destination register. Unless otherwise stated, if such a destination register is omitted, it is the same as the immediately following source register in the instruction syntax.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

spaces Single spaces are used for clarity, to separate items. When a space is obligatory in the assembler syntax, two or more consecutive spaces are used.

+/- This indicates an optional + or - sign. If neither is coded, + is assumed.

All other characters must be encoded precisely as they appear in the assembler syntax. Apart from { and }, the special characters described here do not appear in the basic forms of assembler instructions documented in this manual. The { and } characters must be encoded in a few places as part of a variable item. When this happens, the description of the variable item indicates how they must be used.

A6.1.5 Pseudocode describing how the instruction operates

The *Operation* subsection contains encoding-independent pseudocode that describes the main operation of the instruction. For a detailed description of the pseudocode used and of the relationship between the encoding diagram, the encoding-specific pseudocode and the encoding-independent pseudocode, see Appendix E *Pseudocode Definition*.

A6.1.6 Exception information

The *Exceptions* subsection contains a list of the exceptional conditions that can be caused by execution of the instruction.

Processor exceptions are listed as follows:

- Resets and interrupts, including NMI, PendSV and SysTick, are not listed. They can occur before or after the execution of any instruction, and in some cases during the execution of an instruction, but they are not in general caused by the instruction concerned.
- HardFault exceptions are listed for all instructions that perform explicit data memory accesses.

  All instruction fetches can cause HardFault exceptions. These are not caused by execution of the instruction and so are not listed.
- HardFault exceptions can occur for the following reasons and are listed in the appropriate instructions:
  - Thumb interworking information that indicates a change of execution state
  - execution of a `BKPT` instruction where the Debug Extension is not supported or enabled.

  HardFault exceptions also occur when pseudocode indicates that the instruction is UNDEFINED. These exceptions are not listed.
- The SVCall exception is listed for the `SVC` instruction.

Note

For a summary of the different types of HardFault exceptions see *Fault behavior* on page B1-236.

A6.1.7 Notes

Where appropriate, additional notes about the instruction appear under additional subheadings.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.2 Standard assembler syntax fields

The following assembler syntax fields are standard across all or most instructions:

<c> Is an optional field. It specifies the condition under which the instruction is executed. If <c> is omitted, it defaults to *always* (AL). For details see *Conditional execution* on page A4-67.

Note

B<c> is the only conditional instruction supported in ARMv6-M. Instances of <c> shown in other instructions must be omitted or defined as AL and their corresponding pseudocode function ConditionPassed() in the operation section always returns TRUE.

<q> Specifies optional assembler qualifiers on the instruction. The following qualifiers are defined:

.N Meaning narrow, specifies that the assembler must select a 16-bit encoding for the instruction. If this is not possible, an assembler error is produced.

.W Meaning wide, specifies that the assembler must select a 32-bit encoding for the instruction. If this is not possible, an assembler error is produced.

If neither .W nor .N is specified, the assembler can select either 16-bit or 32-bit encodings. If both are available, it must select a 16-bit encoding. In a few cases, more than one encoding of the same length can be available for an instruction. The rules for selecting between such encodings are instruction-specific and are part of the instruction description.

Note

With the exception of UDF, ARMv6-M only supports either 16-bit encodings or 32-bit encodings for a given instruction. The .N and .W qualifiers are optional and produce assembler errors if incorrectly used.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.3 Conditional execution

In Thumb instructions, the condition, if it is not AL, is normally encoded in a preceding IT instruction. However, ARMv6-M does not support the IT instruction. This means that:

- the <c> suffix must be omitted or AL in all instruction mnemonics except B<c>
- in the pseudocode in this manual:
  - any reference to InITBlock() returns FALSE
  - any reference to LastInITBlock() returns FALSE.

In ARMv6-M, the B<c> instruction can be executed conditionally, based on the values of the APSR condition flags. Table A6-1 shows the available conditions, and associated encodings of the 4-bit cond field, for this instruction.

Table A6-1 Condition codes

cond	Mnemonic extension	Meaning	Condition flags
0000	EQ	Equal	Z == 1
0001	NE	Not equal	Z == 0
0010	CS [a]	Carry set	C == 1
0011	CC [b]	Carry clear	C == 0
0100	MI	Minus, negative	N == 1
0101	PL	Plus, positive or zero	N == 0
0110	VS	Overflow	V == 1
0111	VC	No overflow	V == 0
1000	HI	Unsigned higher	C == 1 and Z == 0
1001	LS	Unsigned lower or same	C == 0 or Z == 1
1010	GE	Signed greater than or equal	N == V
1011	LT	Signed less than	N != V
1100	GT	Signed greater than	Z == 0 and N == V
1101	LE	Signed less than or equal	Z == 1 or N != V
1110[c]	None (AL) [d]	Always (unconditional)	Any

a. HS (unsigned higher or same) is a synonym for CS.
b. LO (unsigned lower) is a synonym for CC.
c. This value is never encoded in any ARMv6-M Thumb instruction.
d. AL is an optional mnemonic extension for always.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.3.1 Pseudocode details of conditional execution

The `CurrentCond()` pseudocode function has prototype:

```
bits(4) CurrentCond()
```

and returns the 4-bit `cond` field of the encoding for the Branch instruction. See *B* on page A6-119 for more information.

The `ConditionPassed()` function uses this condition specifier and the APSR condition flags to determine whether the instruction must be executed:

```
// ConditionPassed()
// =================

boolean ConditionPassed()
    cond = CurrentCond();

    // Evaluate base condition.
    case cond<3:1> of
        when '000'  result = (APSR.Z == '1');                       // EQ or NE
        when '001'  result = (APSR.C == '1');                       // CS or CC
        when '010'  result = (APSR.N == '1');                       // MI or PL
        when '011'  result = (APSR.V == '1');                       // VS or VC
        when '100'  result = (APSR.C == '1') && (APSR.Z == '0');    // HI or LS
        when '101'  result = (APSR.N == APSR.V);                    // GE or LT
        when '110'  result = (APSR.N == APSR.V) && (APSR.Z == '0'); // GT or LE
        when '111'  result = TRUE;                                  // AL

    // Condition flag values in the set '111x' indicate the instruction is always executed.
    // Otherwise, invert condition if necessary.
    if cond<0> == '1' && cond != '1111' then
        result = !result;

    return result;
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.4 Shifts applied to a register

Shifts only apply to the ASR, LSL, LSR, and ROR data-processing instructions in ARMv6-M. Other instructions are declared with shift type SRType_LSL and a shift value of zero where shift operations are supported by additional encodings in other architecture variants.

A6.4.1 Shift operations

```
// DecodeImmShift()
// ================

(SRType, integer) DecodeImmShift(bits(2) type, bits(5) imm5)

    case type of
        when '00'
            shift_t = SRType_LSL;  shift_n = UInt(imm5);
        when '01'
            shift_t = SRType_LSR;  shift_n = if imm5 == '00000' then 32 else UInt(imm5);
        when '10'
            shift_t = SRType_ASR;  shift_n = if imm5 == '00000' then 32 else UInt(imm5);
        when '11'
            if imm5 == '00000' then
                shift_t = SRType_RRX;  shift_n = 1;
            else
                shift_t = SRType_ROR;  shift_n = UInt(imm5);

    return (shift_t, shift_n);

// DecodeRegShift()
// ================

SRType DecodeRegShift(bits(2) type)
    case type of
        when '00'  shift_t = SRType_LSL;
        when '01'  shift_t = SRType_LSR;
        when '10'  shift_t = SRType_ASR;
        when '11'  shift_t = SRType_ROR;
    return shift_t;

// Shift()
// =======

bits(N) Shift(bits(N) value, SRType type, integer amount, bit carry_in)
    (result, -) = Shift_C(value, type, amount, carry_in);
    return result;

// Shift_C()
// =========

(bits(N), bit) Shift_C(bits(N) value, SRType type, integer amount, bit carry_in)
    assert !(type == SRType_RRX && amount != 1);

    if amount == 0 then
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
    (result, carry_out) = (value, carry_in);
else
    case type of
        when SRType_LSL
            (result, carry_out) = LSL_C(value, amount);
        when SRType_LSR
            (result, carry_out) = LSR_C(value, amount);
        when SRType_ASR
            (result, carry_out) = ASR_C(value, amount);
        when SRType_ROR
            (result, carry_out) = ROR_C(value, amount);
        when SRType_RRX
            (result, carry_out) = RRX_C(value, carry_in);

return (result, carry_out);
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.5 Memory accesses

The following addressing mode is commonly permitted in ARMv6-M for memory access instructions:

Offset addressing

The offset value is added to or subtracted from an address obtained from the base register. The result is used as the address for the memory access. The base register is unaltered.

The assembly language syntax for this mode is:

`[<Rn>,<offset>]`

`<Rn>` is the base register and `<offset>` can be:

- an immediate constant, such as `<imm3>` or `<imm8>`
- an index register, `<Rm>`.

For information about unaligned access and endianness, see:

- *Alignment support* on page A3-43
- *Endian support* on page A3-44.

ARMv6-M does not support exclusive access to memory, see *Synchronization and semaphores* on page A3-47.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.6 Hint Instructions

Two classes of hint instruction exist within the Thumb instruction set:

- memory hints
- NOP-compatible hints.

Only 16-bit versions of the NOP-compatible hints are supported in ARMv6-M. For information on the 16-bit encodings see *Hint instructions* on page A5-90.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7 Alphabetical list of ARMv6-M Thumb instructions

Every ARMv6-M Thumb instruction is listed in this section. See *Format of instruction descriptions* on page A6-94 for details of the format used.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.1 ADC (register)

Add with Carry (register) adds a register value, the carry flag value, and an optionally-shifted register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It updates the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
ADCS <Rdn>,<Rm>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	Rm			Rdn		

```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
ADCS{<q>} {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is the same as `<Rn>`.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` The register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], shifted, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

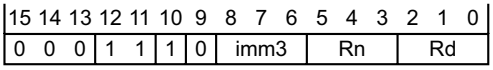
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.2 ADD (immediate)

This instruction adds an immediate value to a register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It updates the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

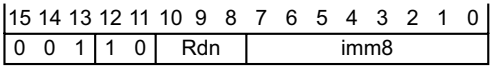
```
ADDS <Rd>,<Rn>,#<imm3>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = !InITBlock();  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm3, 32);
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
ADDS <Rdn>,#<imm8>
```




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  setflags = !InITBlock();  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
```

Assembler syntax

```
ADDS{<q>} {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>
```

All encodings permitted

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is the same as `<Rn>`.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand. If the SP is specified for `<Rn>`, see *ADD (SP plus immediate)* on page A6-111. If the PC is specified for `<Rn>`, see *ADR* on page A6-115.

`<const>` The immediate value to be added to the value obtained from `<Rn>`. The range of permitted values is 0-7 for encoding T1, and 0-255 for encoding T2.

Encoding T1 is preferred to encoding T2 if `<Rd>` is specified and encoding T2 is preferred to encoding T1 if `<Rd>` is omitted.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], imm32, '0');
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

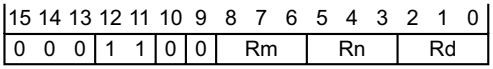
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.3 ADD (register)

This instruction adds a register value and an optionally-shifted register value, and writes the result to the destination register. Encoding T1 updates the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

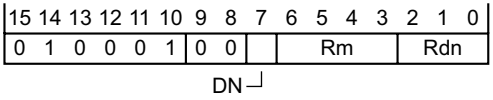
```
ADDS <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
ADD <Rdn>,<Rm>
```




```
if (DN:Rdn) == '1101' || Rm == '1101' then SEE ADD (SP plus register);
d = UInt(DN:Rdn);  n = d;  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = FALSE;  (shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
if n == 15 && m == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if d == 15 && InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
ADD{S}{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`S` If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is the same as `<Rn>` and encoding T2 is preferred to encoding T1 if both are available. If `<Rd>` is specified, encoding T1 is preferred to encoding T2. If `R<m>` is not the PC, the PC can be used in encoding T2.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand. If the SP is specified for `<Rn>`, see *ADD (SP plus register)* on page A6-113. If `R<m>` is not the PC, the PC can be used in encoding T2.

`<Rm>` The register that is used as the second operand. The PC can be used in encoding T2.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], shifted, '0');
    if d == 15 then
        ALUWritePC(result);  // setflags is always FALSE here
    else
        R[d] = result;
        if setflags then
            APSR.N = result<31>;
            APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
            APSR.C = carry;
            APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

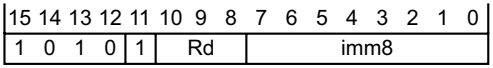
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.4 ADD (SP plus immediate)

This instruction adds an immediate value to the SP value, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

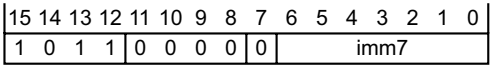
```
ADD <Rd>,SP,#<imm8>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  setflags = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
ADD SP,SP,#<imm7>
```




```
d = 13;  setflags = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm7:'00', 32);
```

Assembler syntax

```
ADD{<q>}  {<Rd>,} SP, #<const>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is SP.

`<const>` The immediate value to be added to the value obtained from `<Rn>`. Permitted values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-1020 for encoding T1and multiples of 4 in the range 0-508 for encoding T2.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(SP, imm32, '0');
    R[d] = result;

    // no flag setting form of the instruction supported
```

Exceptions

None.

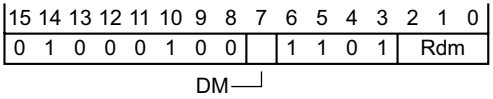
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.5 ADD (SP plus register)

This instruction adds a register value to the SP value, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

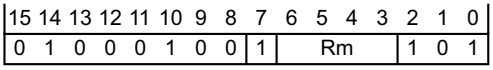
```
ADD <Rdm>, SP, <Rdm>
```




```
d = UInt(DM:Rdm);  m = UInt(DM:Rdm);  setflags = FALSE;
if d == 15 && InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
ADD SP,<Rm>
```




```
if Rm == '1101' then SEE encoding T1;
d = 13;  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
ADD{<q>}  {<Rd>,} SP, <Rm>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is SP.

`<Rm>` The register that is used as the second operand. This register can be the SP, but such instructions are deprecated and the instruction can only be `ADD SP,SP,SP`.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(SP, shifted, '0');
    if d == 15 then
        ALUWritePC(result);
    else
        R[d] = result;    // no flag setting form of the instruction supported
```

Exceptions

None.

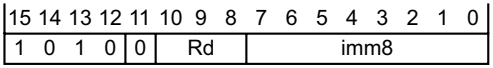
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.6 ADR

Address to Register adds an immediate value to the PC value, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
ADR  <Rd>,<label>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);  add = TRUE;
```

Assembler syntax

`ADR{<q>}  <Rd>, <label>`	Normal syntax
`ADD{<q>}  <Rd>, PC, #<const>`	Alternative syntax

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<label>` The label of an instruction or literal data item whose address is to be loaded into `<Rd>`. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the `Align(PC,4)` value of the `ADR` instruction to this label.

Only a positive value is permitted with `imm32` equal to the offset. Permitted values of the offset are multiples of four in the range 0 to 1020 for encoding T1.

In the alternative syntax forms:

`<const>` The offset value for the `ADD` form. Permitted values are multiples of four in the range 0 to 1020 for encoding T1.

Note

It is recommended that the alternative syntax form is avoided where possible.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = if add then (Align(PC,4) + imm32) else (Align(PC,4) - imm32);
    R[d] = result;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.7 AND (register)

This instruction performs a bitwise AND of a register value and an optionally-shifted register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It updates the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
ANDS  <Rdn>,<Rm>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Rm			Rdn		

```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
ANDS{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is the same as `<Rn>`.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` The register that is used as the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (shifted, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    result = R[n] AND shifted;
    R[d] = result;
        if setflags then
            APSR.N = result<31>;
            APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
            APSR.C = carry;
            // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

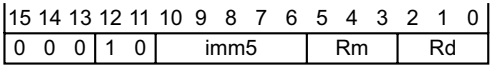
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.8 ASR (immediate)

Arithmetic Shift Right (immediate) shifts a register value right by an immediate number of bits, shifting in copies of its sign bit, and writes the result to the destination register. It updates the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
ASRS  <Rd>,<Rm>,#<imm5>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(-, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift('10', imm5);
```

Assembler syntax

```
ASRS{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm5>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<imm5>` The shift amount, in the range 1 to 32. See *Shifts applied to a register* on page A6-101.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], SRType_ASR, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
        if setflags then
            APSR.N = result<31>;
            APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
            APSR.C = carry;
            // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.9 ASR (register)

Arithmetic Shift Right (register) shifts a register value right by a variable number of bits, shifting in copies of its sign bit, and writes the result to the destination register. The variable number of bits is read from the bottom byte of a register. It updates the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
ASRS  <Rdn>,<Rm>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	Rm			Rdn		

```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
```

Assembler syntax

```
ASRS{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` The register whose bottom byte contains the amount to shift by.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shift_n = UInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[n], SRType_ASR, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

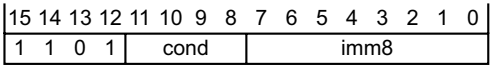
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.10 B

Branch causes a branch to a target address.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

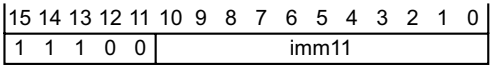
```
B<c>  <label>
```




```
if cond == '1110' then UNDEFINED;
if cond == '1111' then SEE SVC;
imm32 = SignExtend(imm8:'0', 32);
if InITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
B<c> <label>
```




```
imm32 = SignExtend(imm11:'0', 32);
if InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
B{<c>}{<q>}  <label>
```

where:

`<c>{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

Note

- Encoding T1 is conditional.
- For encoding T1, `<c>` must not be `AL` or omitted.
- For ARMv6-M, for encoding T2, `<c>` must be `AL` or omitted.

`<label>` The label of the instruction that is to be branched to. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the PC value of the `B` instruction to this label, then selects an encoding that sets `imm32` to that offset.

Permitted offsets are even numbers in the range -256 to 254 for encoding T1 and -2048 to 2046 for encoding T2.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    BranchWritePC(PC + imm32);
```

Exceptions

None.

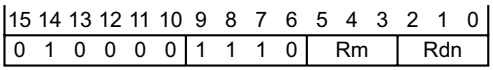
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.11 BIC (register)

Bit Clear (register) performs a bitwise AND of a register value and the complement of an optionally-shifted register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It updates the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
BICS  <Rdn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
BICS{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is the same as `<Rn>`.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` The register that is used as the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (shifted, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    result = R[n] AND NOT(shifted);
    R[d] = result;
        if setflags then
            APSR.N = result<31>;
            APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
            APSR.C = carry;
            // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

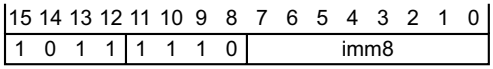
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.12 BKPT

Breakpoint causes a HardFault exception or a debug halt to occur depending on the presence and configuration of the debug support.

Encoding T1 ARMv5T*, ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M M profile specific behavior

```
BKPT  #<imm8>
```




```
imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
// imm32 is for assembly/disassembly only and is ignored by hardware.
```

Assembler syntax

```
BKPT{<q>}  {#}<imm8>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<imm8>` Specifies an 8-bit value that is stored in the instruction. This value is ignored by the ARM hardware, but can be used by a debugger to store additional information about the breakpoint.

Operation

```
EncodingSpecificOperations();
BKPTInstrDebugEvent();
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

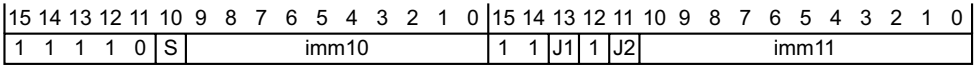
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.13 BL

Branch with Link (immediate) calls a subroutine at a PC-relative address.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
BL  <label>
```




```
I1 = NOT(J1 EOR S);  I2 = NOT(J2 EOR S);  imm32 = SignExtend(S:I1:I2:imm10:imm11:'0', 32);
if InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
BL{<q>}  <label>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<label>` The label of the instruction that is to be branched to.

The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the PC value of the `BL` instruction to this label, then selects an encoding that sets `imm32` to that offset. Permitted offsets are even numbers in the range -16777216 to 16777214.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    next_instr_addr = PC;
    LR = next_instr_addr<31:1> : '1';
    BranchWritePC(PC + imm32);
```

Exceptions

None.

Note

Before the introduction of Thumb-2 technology, J1 and J2 in encodings T1 and T2 were both 1, resulting in a smaller branch range. The instructions could be executed as two separate 16-bit instructions, with the first instruction `instr1` setting LR to `PC + SignExtend(instr1<10:0>:'000000000000', 32)` and the second instruction completing the operation. It is no longer possible to split the `BL` instruction into two 16-bit instructions in ARMv6T2, ARMv6-M and ARMv7.

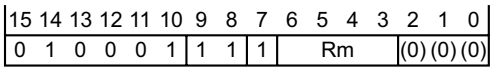
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.14 BLX (register)

Branch with Link and Exchange calls a subroutine at an address and instruction set specified by a register. ARMv6-M only supports Thumb execution. An attempt to change the instruction execution state causes an exception on the instruction at the target address.

Encoding T1 ARMv5T*, ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
BLX  <Rm>
```




```
m = UInt(Rm);
if m == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
BLX{<q>}  <Rm>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the branch target address and instruction set selection bit.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    target = R[m];
    next_instr_addr = PC - 2;
    LR = next_instr_addr<31:1> : '1';
    BLXWritePC(target);
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

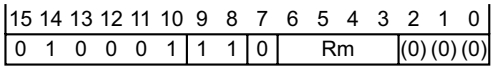
A6.7.15 BX

Branch and Exchange causes a branch to an address and instruction set specified by a register. ARMv6-M only supports Thumb execution. An attempt to change the instruction execution state causes an exception on the instruction at the target address.

`BX` can also be used for an exception return, see *Exception return behavior* on page B1-227.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
BX  <Rm>
```




```
m = UInt(Rm);
if InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
if m==15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
BX{<q>}  <Rm>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the branch target address and instruction set selection bit.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    BXWritePC(R[m]);
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

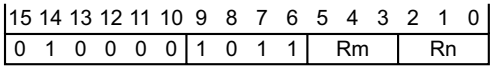
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.16 CMN (register)

Compare Negative (register) adds a register value and an optionally-shifted register value. It updates the condition flags based on the result, and discards the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
CMN  <Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
CMN{<q>}  <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` The register that is used as the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], shifted, '0');
    APSR.N = result<31>;
    APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
    APSR.C = carry;
    APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

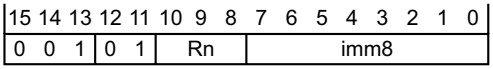
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.17 CMP (immediate)

Compare (immediate) subtracts an immediate value from a register value. It updates the condition flags based on the result, and discards the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
CMP  <Rn>,#<imm8>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
```

Assembler syntax

```
CMP{<q>}  <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the operand.

`<const>` The immediate value to be added to the value obtained from `<Rn>`. The range of permitted values is 0-255 for encoding T1.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], NOT(imm32), '1');
    APSR.N = result<31>;
    APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
    APSR.C = carry;
    APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

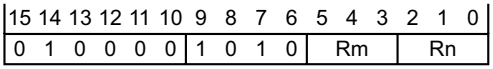
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.18 CMP (register)

Compare (register) subtracts an optionally-shifted register value from a register value. It updates the condition flags based on the result, and discards the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

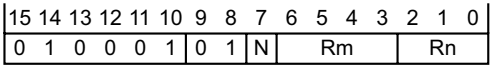
`CMP <Rn>,<Rm>` `<Rn>` and `<Rm>` both from R0-R7




```
n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`CMP <Rn>,<Rm>` `<Rn>` and `<Rm>` not both from R0-R7




```
n = UInt(N:Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
if n < 8 && m < 8 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if n == 15 || m == 15 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
CMP{<q>}  <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand. The SP can be used.

`<Rm>` The register that is optionally shifted and used as the second operand. The SP can be used, but use of the SP is deprecated.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], NOT(shifted), '1');
    APSR.N = result<31>;
    APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
    APSR.C = carry;
    APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.19 CPS

Change Processor State is a system instruction, see *CPS* on page B4-306.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.20 CPY

Copy is a pre-UAL synonym for `MOV` (register).

Assembler syntax

```
CPY  <Rd>, <Rn>
```

This is equivalent to:

```
MOV  <Rd>, <Rn>
```

Exceptions

None.

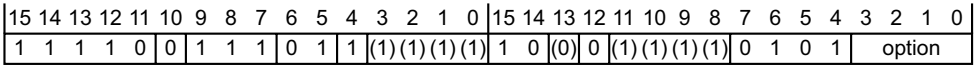
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.21 DMB

Data Memory Barrier acts as a memory barrier. It ensures that all explicit memory accesses that appear in program order before the `DMB` instruction are observed before any explicit memory accesses that appear in program order after the `DMB` instruction. It does not affect the ordering of any other instructions executing on the processor.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
DMB  #<option>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	1	0	(0)	0	(1)	(1)	(1)	(1)	0	1	0	1	option			

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Assembler syntax

```
DMB{<q>}  {<opt>}
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<opt>` Specifies an optional limitation on the DMB operation:

`SY` DMB operation ensures ordering of all accesses, encoded as option == '1111'. Can be omitted.

All other encodings of the option are reserved. The corresponding instructions execute as system (SY) DMB operations, but software must not rely on this behavior.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    DataMemoryBarrier(option);
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

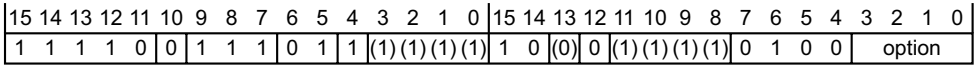
A6.7.22 DSB

Data Synchronization Barrier acts as a special kind of memory barrier. No instruction in program order after this instruction can execute until this instruction completes. This instruction completes only when both:

- any explicit memory access made before this instruction is complete
- all cache and branch predictor maintenance operations before this instruction complete.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
DSB  #<option>
```




```
// No additional decoding required
```

Assembler syntax

```
DSB{<q>}  {<opt>}
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<opt>` Specifies an optional limitation on the DSB operation:

`SY` DSB operation ensures completion of all accesses, encoded as option == '1111'. Can be omitted.

All other encodings of option are reserved. The corresponding instructions execute as system (SY) DSB operations, but software must not rely on this behavior.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    DataSynchronizationBarrier(option);
```

Exceptions

None.

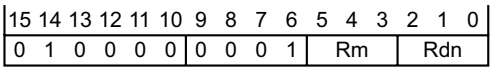
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.23 EOR (register)

Exclusive OR (register) performs a bitwise Exclusive OR of a register value and an optionally-shifted register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It updates the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
EORS  <Rdn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
EORS{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

S The instruction updates the flags.

{<q>} See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

<Rd> The destination register. If <Rd> is omitted, this register is the same as <Rn>.

<Rn> The register that contains the first operand.

<Rm> The register that is used as the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (shifted, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    result = R[n] EOR shifted;
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

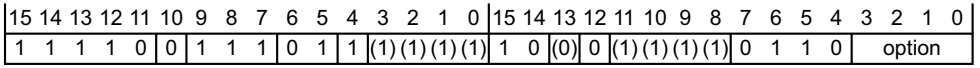
A6.7.24 ISB

Instruction Synchronization Barrier flushes the pipeline in the processor, so that all instructions following the `ISB` are fetched from cache or memory after the instruction has completed. It ensures that the effects of context altering operations, such as those resulting from read or write accesses to the system control space (SCS), that completed before the `ISB` instruction are visible to the instructions fetched after the `ISB`. See *Barrier support for system correctness* on page B2-255 for more details.

In addition, the `ISB` instruction ensures that any branches that appear in program order after it are always written into any branch prediction logic with the context that is visible after the `ISB` instruction. This is required to ensure correct execution of the instruction stream.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
ISB  #<option>
```




```
// No additional decoding required
```

Assembler syntax

```
ISB{<q>}  {<opt>}
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<opt>` Specifies an optional limitation on the ISB operation. Permitted values are:

`SY` Full system ISB operation, encoded as option == '1111'. Can be omitted.

All other encodings of option are reserved. The corresponding instructions execute as full system ISB operations, but must not be relied on by software.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    InstructionSynchronizationBarrier(option);
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

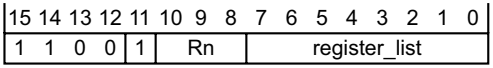
A6.7.25 LDM, LDMIA, LDMFD

Load Multiple Increment After loads multiple registers from consecutive memory locations using an address from a base register. The sequential memory locations start at this address, and the address above the last of those locations is written back to the base register when the base register is not part of the register list.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

`LDM <Rn>!,<registers>` `<Rn>` not included in `<registers>`

`LDM <Rn>,<registers>` `<Rn>` included in `<registers>`




```
n = UInt(Rn);  registers = '00000000':register_list;  wback = (registers<n> == '0');
if BitCount(registers) < 1 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDM{<q>}  <Rn>{!}, <registers>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rn>` The base register.

`!` Causes the instruction to write a modified value back to `<Rn>`. If `!` is omitted, the instruction does not change `<Rn>` in this way.

`<registers>` Is a list of one or more registers to be loaded, separated by commas and surrounded by { and }. The lowest-numbered register is loaded from the lowest memory address, through to the highest-numbered register from the highest memory address.

`LDMIA` and `LDMFD` are pseudo-instructions for `LDM`. `LDMFD` refers to its use for popping data from Full Descending stacks.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n];

    for i = 0 to 7
        if registers<i> == '1' then
            R[i] = MemA[address,4];  address = address + 4;

    if wback && registers<n> == '0' then R[n] = R[n] + 4*BitCount(registers);
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

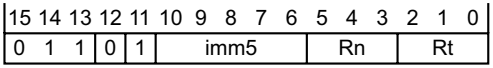
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.26 LDR (immediate)

Load Register (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads a word from memory, and writes it to a register. Offset addressing is used, see *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for more information.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

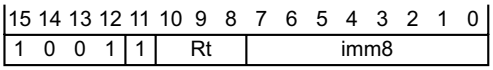
```
LDR <Rt>, [<Rn>{,#<imm5>}]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm5:'00', 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
LDR <Rt>,[SP{,#<imm8>}]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = 13;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDR{<q>}  <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The base register.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value.

`add == TRUE`

`<imm>` The immediate offset added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. Permitted values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-124 for encoding T1 and multiples of 4 in the range 0-1020 for encoding T2. For the offset addressing syntax, `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    R[t] = MemU[address,4];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

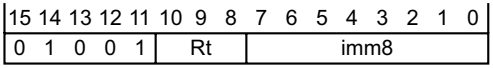
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.27 LDR (literal)

Load Register (literal) calculates an address from the PC value and an immediate offset, loads a word from memory, and writes it to a register. See *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
LDR <Rt>,<label>
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);  add = TRUE;
```

Assembler syntax

`LDR{<q>}  <Rt>, <label>`	Normal syntax
`LDR{<q>}  <Rt>, [PC, #<imm>]`	Alternative syntax

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The destination register.

`<label>` The label of the literal data item that is to be loaded into `<Rt>`. The assembler calculates the required value of the offset from the PC value of this instruction to the label.

Permitted values of the offset are multiples of four in the range 0 to 1020 for encoding T1.

In the alternative syntax form:

`<imm>` The immediate offset added to the `Align(PC, 4)` value of the instruction to form the address. Permitted values are multiples of four in the range 0 to 1020 for encoding T1.

Note

It is recommended that the alternative syntax form is avoided where possible.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    base = Align(PC,4);
    address = if add then (base + imm32) else (base - imm32);
    R[t] = MemU[address,4];
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

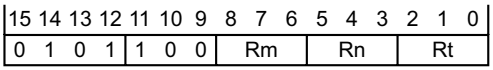
A6.7.28 LDR (register)

Load Register (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, loads a word from memory, and writes it to a register. Offset addressing is used, see *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for more information.

The register loaded can be the PC. If it is, the word loaded for the PC is treated as an address or exception return value and a branch occurs. Bit [0] complies with the ARM architecture interworking rules for branches to Thumb state execution and must be 1. If bit [0] is 0, a HardFault exception occurs.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
LDR <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDR{<q>}  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the base value.

`<Rm>` Contains the offset that is added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + offset) else (R[n] - offset);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    R[t] = MemU[address,4];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

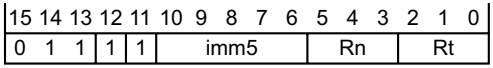
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.29 LDRB (immediate)

Load Register Byte (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads a byte from memory, zero-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. Offset addressing is used, see *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for more information.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
LDRB <Rt>,[<Rn>{,#<imm5>}]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm5, 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDRB{<q>}  <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The base register.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value.

```
add == TRUE
```

`<imm>` The immediate offset added to or subtracted from the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. The range of permitted values is 0-31 for encoding T1. `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    R[t] = ZeroExtend(MemU[address,1], 32);
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

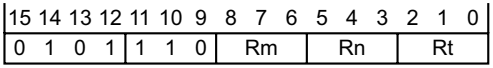
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.30 LDRB (register)

Load Register Byte (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, loads a byte from memory, zero-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. Offset addressing is used, see *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for more information.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
LDRB <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDRB{<q>}  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the base value.

`<Rm>` Contains the offset that is added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + offset) else (R[n] - offset);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    R[t] = ZeroExtend(MemU[address,1],32);
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

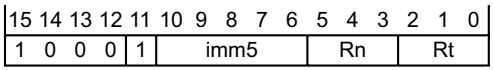
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.31 LDRH (immediate)

Load Register Halfword (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, loads a halfword from memory, zero-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. Offset addressing is used, see *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for more information.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
LDRH <Rt>,[<Rn>{,#<imm5>}]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm5:'0', 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDRH{<q>}  <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The base register.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value.

`add == TRUE`

`<imm>` The immediate offset added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. Permitted values are multiples of 2 in the range 0-62 for encoding T1. `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    data = MemU[address,2];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
    R[t] = ZeroExtend(data, 32);
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

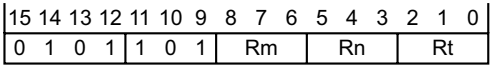
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.32 LDRH (register)

Load Register Halfword (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, loads a halfword from memory, zero-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. Offset addressing is used, see *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for more information.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
LDRH <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDRH{<q>}  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the base value.

`<Rm>` Contains the offset that is added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + offset) else (R[n] - offset);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    data = MemU[address,2];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
    R[t] = ZeroExtend(data, 32);
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

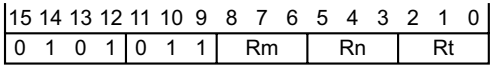
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.33 LDRSB (register)

Load Register Signed Byte (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, loads a byte from memory, sign-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. Offset addressing is used, see *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for more information.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
LDRSB <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDRSB{<q>}  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the base value.

`<Rm>` Contains the offset that is added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + offset) else (R[n] - offset);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    R[t] = SignExtend(MemU[address,1], 32);
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

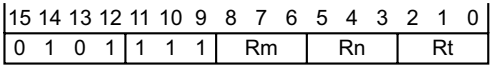
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.34 LDRSH (register)

Load Register Signed Halfword (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, loads a halfword from memory, sign-extends it to form a 32-bit word, and writes it to a register. Offset addressing is used, see *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for more information.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
LDRSH <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
LDRSH{<q>}  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the base value.

`<Rm>` Contains the offset that is added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + offset) else (R[n] - offset);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    data = MemU[address,2];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
    R[t] = SignExtend(data, 32);
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

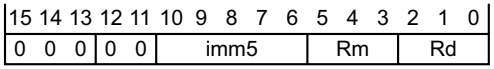
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.35 LSL (immediate)

Logical Shift Left (immediate) shifts a register value left by an immediate number of bits, shifting in zeros, and writes the result to the destination register. The condition flags are updated based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
LSLS <Rd>,<Rm>,#<imm5>
```




```
if imm5 == '00000' then SEE MOV (register);
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(-, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift('00', imm5);
```

Assembler syntax

```
LSLS{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm5>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<imm5>` The shift amount, in the range 0 to 31. See *Shifts applied to a register* on page A6-101.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], SRType_LSL, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

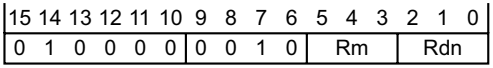
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.36 LSL (register)

Logical Shift Left (register) shifts a register value left by a variable number of bits, shifting in zeros, and writes the result to the destination register. The variable number of bits is read from the bottom byte of a register. The condition flags are updated based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
LSLS  <Rdn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
```

Assembler syntax

```
LSLS{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` The register whose bottom byte contains the amount to shift by.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shift_n = UInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[n], SRType_LSL, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.37 LSR (immediate)

Logical Shift Right (immediate) shifts a register value right by an immediate number of bits, shifting in zeros, and writes the result to the destination register. The condition flags are updated based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
LSRS <Rd>,<Rm>,#<imm5>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	1	imm5					Rm			Rd		

```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(-, shift_n) = DecodeImmShift('01', imm5);
```

Assembler syntax

```
LSRS{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm5>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags..

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<imm5>` The shift amount, in the range 1 to 32. See *Shifts applied to a register* on page A6-101.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], SRType_LSR, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

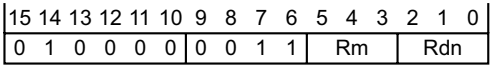
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.38 LSR (register)

Logical Shift Right (register) shifts a register value right by a variable number of bits, shifting in zeros, and writes the result to the destination register. The variable number of bits is read from the bottom byte of a register. The condition flags are updated based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
LSRS  <Rdn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
```

Assembler syntax

```
LSRS{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` The register whose bottom byte contains the amount to shift by.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shift_n = UInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[n], SRType_LSR, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

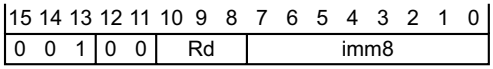
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.39 MOV (immediate)

Move (immediate) writes an immediate value to the destination register. The condition flags are updated based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
MOVS <Rd>,#<imm8>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  setflags = !InITBlock();  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);  carry = APSR.C;
```

Assembler syntax

```
MOVS{<q>}  <Rd>, #<const>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<const>` The immediate value to be placed in `<Rd>`. The range of permitted values is 0-255 for encoding T1.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = imm32;
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.40 MOV (register)

Move (register) copies a value from a register to the destination register. Encoding T2 updates the condition flags based on the value.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M, if <Rd> and <Rm> both from R0-R7. Otherwise all versions of the Thumb instruction set.

MOV <Rd>,<Rm>

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	D	Rm				Rd		

```
d = UInt(D:Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = FALSE;
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

MOVS <Rd>,<Rm>

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Rm			Rd		

```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = TRUE;
```

Assembler syntax

MOV{S}{<q>} <Rd>, <Rm>

where:

{S} If present, specifies that the instruction updates the flags. Otherwise, the instruction does not update the flags.

{<q>} See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

<Rd> The destination register. This register can be the SP or PC, provided S is not specified. If <Rd> is the PC, the instruction causes a branch to the address moved to the PC.

<Rm> The source register. This register can be the SP or PC. The instruction must not specify S if <Rm> is the SP or PC.

Note

ARM deprecates the use of the following MOV (register) instructions:

- ones in which <Rd> is the SP or PC and <Rm> is also the SP or PC
- ones in which S is specified and <Rm> is the SP, or <Rm> is the PC.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    result = R[m];
    if d == 15 then
        ALUWritePC(result);  // setflags is always FALSE here
    else
        R[d] = result;
        if setflags then
            APSR.N = result<31>;
            APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
            // APSR.C unchanged
            // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.41 MOV (shifted register)

Move (shifted register) is a pseudo-instruction for ASR, LSL, LSR, and ROR.

See the following sections for details:

- *ASR (immediate)* on page A6-117
- *ASR (register)* on page A6-118
- *LSL (immediate)* on page A6-150
- *LSL (register)* on page A6-151
- *LSR (immediate)* on page A6-152
- *LSR (register)* on page A6-153
- *ROR (register)* on page A6-171.

Assembler syntax

Table A6-2 shows the equivalences between MOV (shifted register) and other instructions.

Table A6-2 MOV (shift, register shift) equivalences)

MOV instruction	Canonical form
MOVS <Rd>,<Rm>,ASR #<n>	ASRS <Rd>,<Rm>,#<n>
MOVS <Rd>,<Rm>,LSL #<n>	LSLS <Rd>,<Rm>,#<n>
MOVS <Rd>,<Rm>,LSR #<n>	LSRS <Rd>,<Rm>,#<n>
MOVS <Rd>,<Rm>,ASR <Rs>	ASRS <Rd>,<Rm>,<Rs>
MOVS <Rd>,<Rm>,LSL <Rs>	LSLS <Rd>,<Rm>,<Rs>
MOVS <Rd>,<Rm>,LSR <Rs>	LSRS <Rd>,<Rm>,<Rs>
MOVS <Rd>,<Rm>,ROR <Rs>	RORS <Rd>,<Rm>,<Rs>

The canonical form of the instruction is produced on disassembly.

Exceptions

None.

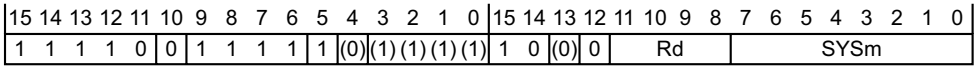
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.42 MRS

Move to Register from Special register moves the value from the selected special-purpose register into a general-purpose ARM register.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M Enhanced functionality in ARMv7-M

```
MRS <Rd>,<spec_reg>
```



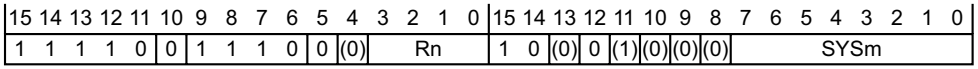
`MRS` is a system instruction except when accessing the APSR or CONTROL register. See *MRS* on page B4-308 for the complete instruction definition, including the application-level uses.

A6.7.43 MSR (register)

Move to Special Register from ARM Register moves the value of a general-purpose ARM register to the specified special-purpose register.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M Enhanced functionality in ARMv7-M

```
MSR <spec_reg>,<Rn>
```



`MSR` (register) is a system instruction except when accessing the APSR. See *MSR (register)* on page B4-310 for the complete instruction definition, including the application-level uses.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

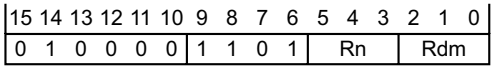
A6.7.44 MUL

Multiply multiplies two register values. The least significant 32 bits of the result are written to the destination register. These 32 bits do not depend on whether signed or unsigned calculations are performed.

The condition flags are updated based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
MULS <Rdm>,<Rn>,<Rdm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rdm);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rdm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
```

Assembler syntax

```
MULS{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

Note

For ARMv6-M, `<Rd>` can only be omitted when d == n ==m. See *Assembler syntax prototype line conventions* on page A6-96 for the rule on optional arguments.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the second operand.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    operand1 = SInt(R[n]);  // operand1 = UInt(R[n]) produces the same final results
    operand2 = SInt(R[m]);  // operand2 = UInt(R[m]) produces the same final results
    result = operand1 * operand2;
    R[d] = result<31:0>;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        // APSR.C unchanged
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

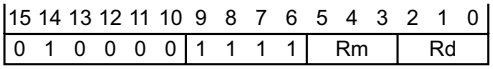
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.45 MVN (register)

Bitwise NOT (register) writes the bitwise inverse of a register value to the destination register. The condition flags are updated based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
MVNS <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
MVNS{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rm>` The register that is used as the source register.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (shifted, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    result = NOT(shifted);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.46 NEG

Negate is a pre-UAL synonym for RSB (immediate) with an immediate value of 0. See *RSB (immediate)* on page A6-172 for details.

Assembler syntax

```
NEG{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rm>
```

This is equivalent to:

```
RSBS{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rm>, #0
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.47 NOP

No Operation does nothing. This instruction can be used for code alignment purposes.

This is a NOP-compatible hint, the architected NOP. See *Hint Instructions* on page A6-104 for more information.

See *Pre-UAL pseudo-instruction NOP* on page AppxD-384 for details of `NOP` before the introduction of UAL.

Note

The timing effects of including a `NOP` instruction in code are not guaranteed. It can increase execution time, leave it unchanged, or even reduce it. `NOP` instructions are therefore not suitable for timing loops.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
NOP
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Assembler syntax

```
NOP{<q>}
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    // Do nothing
```

Exceptions

None.

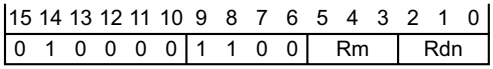
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.48 ORR (register)

Logical OR (register) performs a bitwise, inclusive, OR of a register value and an optionally-shifted register value, and writes the result to the destination register. The condition flags are updated based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
ORRS  <Rdn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
ORRS{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is the same as `<Rn>`.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` The register that is used as the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (shifted, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    result = R[n] OR shifted;
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

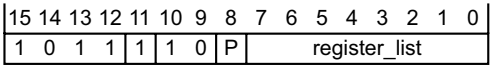
A6.7.49 POP

Pop Multiple Registers loads a subset, or possibly all, of the general-purpose registers R0-R7 and the PC from the stack.

If the registers loaded include the PC, the word loaded for the PC is treated as a branch address or an exception return value and a branch occurs. Bit [0] complies with the ARM architecture interworking rules for branches to Thumb state execution and must be 1. If bit [0] is 0, a HardFault exception occurs.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
POP <registers>
```




```
registers = P:'0000000':register_list;   UnalignedAllowed = FALSE;
if BitCount(registers) < 1 then UNPREDICTABLE;
if registers<15> == '1' && InITBlock() && !LastInITBlock() then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
POP{<q>}  <registers>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<registers>`

Is a list of one or more registers, separated by commas and surrounded by { and }. It specifies the set of registers to be loaded. The lowest-numbered register is loaded from the lowest memory address, through to the highest-numbered register from the highest memory address. If the PC is specified in the register list, the instruction causes a branch to the address (data) loaded into the PC.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = SP;

    for i = 0 to 7
        if registers<i> == '1' then
            R[i] = MemA[address,4];  address = address + 4;
    if registers<15> == '1' then
        LoadWritePC(MemA[address,4]);

    SP = SP + 4*BitCount(registers);
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

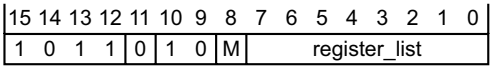
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.50 PUSH

Push Multiple Registers stores a subset, or possibly all, of the general-purpose registers R0-R7 and the LR to the stack.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
PUSH <registers>
```




```
registers = '0':M:'000000':register_list;  UnalignedAllowed = FALSE;
if BitCount(registers) < 1 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
PUSH{<q>}  <registers>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<registers>`

Is a list of one or more registers, separated by commas and surrounded by { and }. It specifies the set of registers to be stored. The registers are stored in sequence, the lowest-numbered register to the lowest memory address, through to the highest-numbered register to the highest memory address.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = SP - 4*BitCount(registers);

    for i = 0 to 14
        if registers<i> == '1' then
            MemA[address,4] = R[i];
            address = address + 4;

    SP = SP - 4*BitCount(registers);
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

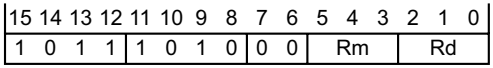
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.51 REV

Byte-Reverse Word reverses the byte order in a 32-bit register.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
REV <Rd>,<Rm>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	Rm			Rd		

```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);
```

Assembler syntax

```
REV{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    bits(32) result;
    result<31:24> = R[m]<7:0>;
    result<23:16> = R[m]<15:8>;
    result<15:8>  = R[m]<23:16>;
    result<7:0>   = R[m]<31:24>;
    R[d] = result;
```

Exceptions

None.

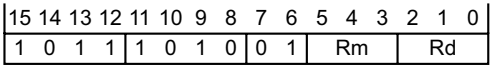
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.52 REV16

Byte-Reverse Packed Halfword reverses the byte order in each 16-bit halfword of a 32-bit register.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
REV16 <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);
```

Assembler syntax

```
REV16{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    bits(32) result;
    result<31:24> = R[m]<23:16>;
    result<23:16> = R[m]<31:24>;
    result<15:8>  = R[m]<7:0>;
    result<7:0>   = R[m]<15:8>;
    R[d] = result;
```

Exceptions

None.

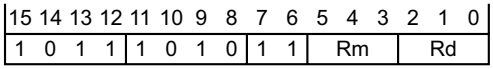
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.53 REVSH

Byte-Reverse Signed Halfword reverses the byte order in the lower 16-bit halfword of a 32-bit register, and sign extends the result to 32 bits.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
REVSH <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);
```

Assembler syntax

```
REVSH{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    bits(32) result;
    result<31:8>  = SignExtend(R[m]<7:0>, 24);
    result<7:0>   = R[m]<15:8>;
    R[d] = result;
```

Exceptions

None.

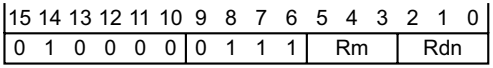
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.54 ROR (register)

Rotate Right (register) provides the value of the contents of a register rotated by a variable number of bits. The bits that are rotated off the right end are inserted into the vacated bit positions on the left. The variable number of bits is read from the bottom byte of a register. The condition flags are updated based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
RORS <Rdn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
```

Assembler syntax

```
RORS{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` The register whose bottom byte contains the amount to rotate by.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shift_n = UInt(R[m]<7:0>);
    (result, carry) = Shift_C(R[n], SRType_ROR, shift_n, APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.55 RSB (immediate)

Reverse Subtract (immediate) subtracts a register value from an immediate value, and writes the result to the destination register. The condition flags are updated based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
RSBS <Rd>,<Rn>,#0
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	Rn			Rd		

```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = !InITBlock();  imm32 = Zeros(32); // immediate = #0
```

Assembler syntax

```
RSBS{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is the same as `<Rn>`.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<const>` The immediate value to be added to the value obtained from `<Rn>`. ARMv6-M only supports a value of 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(NOT(R[n]), imm32, '1');
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

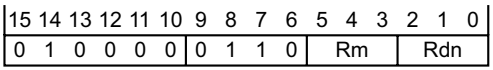
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.56 SBC (register)

Subtract with Carry (register) subtracts an optionally-shifted register value and the value of NOT(Carry flag) from a register value, and writes the result to the destination register. The condition flags are updated based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
SBCS <Rdn>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
SBCS{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is the same as `<Rn>`.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` The register that is used as the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], NOT(shifted), APSR.C);
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

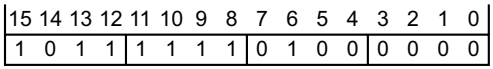
A6.7.57 SEV

Send Event is a hint instruction. It causes an event to be signaled to all CPUs within a multiprocessor system.

This is a NOP-compatible hint, see *Hint Instructions* on page A6-104.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
SEV
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Assembler syntax

```
SEV{<q>}
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    Hint_SendEvent();
```

Exceptions

None.

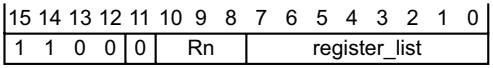
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.58 STM, STMIA, STMEA

The Store Multiple Increment After and the Store Multiple Empty Ascending instructions store multiple registers to consecutive memory locations using an address from a base register. The sequential memory locations start at this address, and the address above the last of those locations is written back to the base register.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
STM <Rn>!,<registers>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  registers = '00000000':register_list;  wback = TRUE;
if BitCount(registers) < 1 then UNPREDICTABLE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
STM{IA|EA}{<q>}  <Rn>!, <registers>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rn>` The base register.

`!` Causes the instruction to write a modified value back to `<Rn>`.

`<registers>`

Is a list of one or more registers to be stored, separated by commas and surrounded by { and }. The lowest-numbered register is stored to the lowest memory address, through to the highest-numbered register to the highest memory address.

If the base register is included and not the lowest-numbered register in the list, such an instruction stores an UNKNOWN value for the base register. Use of <Rn> in the register list is deprecated.

`STMEA` and `STMIA` are pseudo-instructions for `STM`, `STMEA` referring to its use for pushing data onto Empty Ascending stacks.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    address = R[n];

    for i = 0 to 14
        if registers<i> == '1' then
            if i == n && wback && i != LowestSetBit(registers) then
                MemA[address,4] = bits(32) UNKNOWN;    // encoding T1 only
            else
                MemA[address,4] = R[i];
            address = address + 4;

    if wback then R[n] = R[n] + 4*BitCount(registers);
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

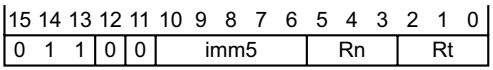
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.59 STR (immediate)

Store Register (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, and stores a word from a register to memory. See *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

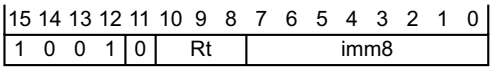
```
STR <Rt>, [<Rn>{,#<imm5>}]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm5:'00', 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
STR <Rt>,[SP,#<imm8>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = 13;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8:'00', 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
STR{<q>}  <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The source register.

`<Rn>` The base register.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value.

`add == TRUE`

`<imm>` The immediate offset added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. Permitted values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-124 for encoding T1 and multiples of 4 in the range 0-1020 for encoding T2. `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    MemU[address,4] = R[t];
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

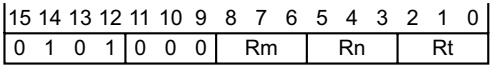
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.60 STR (register)

Store Register (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, stores a word from a register to memory. See *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
STR <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
STR{<q>}  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The source register.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the base value.

`<Rm>` Contains the offset that is added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    address = R[n] + offset;
    MemU[address,4] = R[t];
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

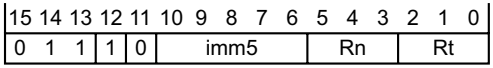
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.61 STRB (immediate)

Store Register Byte (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, and stores a byte from a register to memory. See *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
STRB <Rt>,[<Rn>,#<imm5>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm5, 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
STRB{<q>}  <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The source register.

`<Rn>` The base register.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value.

`add == TRUE`

`<imm>` The immediate offset added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. The range of permitted values is 0-31 for encoding T1. `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    MemU[address,1] = R[t]<7:0>;
    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

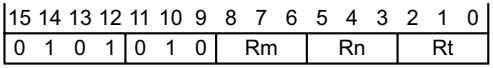
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.62 STRB (register)

Store Register Byte (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, and stores a byte from a register to memory. See *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
STRB <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
STRB{<q>}  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm> {, LSL #<shift>}]
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The source register.

`<Rn>` The base register.

`<Rm>` Contains the offset that is added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    address = R[n] + offset;
    MemU[address,1] = R[t]<7:0>;
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

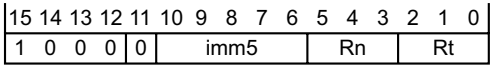
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.63 STRH (immediate)

Store Register Halfword (immediate) calculates an address from a base register value and an immediate offset, and stores a halfword from a register to memory. See *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
STRH <Rt>,[<Rn>{,#<imm5>}]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm5:'0', 32);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
```

Assembler syntax

```
STRH{<q>}  <Rt>, [<Rn> {, #+/-<imm>}]
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The source register.

`<Rn>` The base register.

`+/-` Is + or omitted to indicate that the immediate offset is added to the base register value.

`add == TRUE`

`<imm>` The immediate offset added to or subtracted from the value of `<Rn>` to form the address. Permitted values are multiples of 2 in the range 0-62 for encoding T1. `<imm>` can be omitted, meaning an offset of 0.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset_addr = if add then (R[n] + imm32) else (R[n] - imm32);
    address = if index then offset_addr else R[n];
    MemU[address,2] = R[t]<15:0>;

    if wback then R[n] = offset_addr;
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

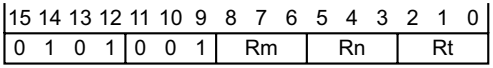
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.64 STRH (register)

Store Register Halfword (register) calculates an address from a base register value and an offset register value, and stores a halfword from a register to memory. See *Memory accesses* on page A6-103 for information about memory accesses.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
STRH <Rt>,[<Rn>,<Rm>]
```




```
t = UInt(Rt);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
index = TRUE;  add = TRUE;  wback = FALSE;
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
STRH{<q>}  <Rt>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rt>` The source register.

`<Rn>` The base register.

`<Rm>` Contains the offset that is added to the value of `<Rn>` to form the address.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    offset = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    address = R[n] + offset;
    MemU[address,2] = R[t]<15:0>;
```

Exceptions

HardFault.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.65 SUB (immediate)

This instruction subtracts an immediate value from a register value, and writes the result to the destination register. The condition flags are updated based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
SUBS <Rd>,<Rn>,#<imm3>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	1	1	1	imm3			Rn			Rd		

```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  setflags = !InITBlock();  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm3, 32);
```

Encoding T2 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
SUBS <Rdn>,#<imm8>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	1	1	1	Rdn			imm8							

```
d = UInt(Rdn);  n = UInt(Rdn);  setflags = !InITBlock();  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
```

Assembler syntax

```
SUBS{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, #<const>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is the same as `<Rn>`.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<const>` The immediate value to be subtracted from the value obtained from `<Rn>`. The range of permitted values is 0-7 for encoding T1 and 0-255 for encoding T2.

Encoding T1 is preferred to encoding T2 if `<Rd>` is specified and encoding T2 is preferred to encoding T1 if `<Rd>` is omitted.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], NOT(imm32), '1');
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.66 SUB (register)

This instruction subtracts an optionally-shifted register value from a register value, and writes the result to the destination register. It updates the condition flags based on the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
SUBS <Rd>,<Rn>,<Rm>
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	0	0	1	1	0	1	Rm			Rn			Rd		

```
d = UInt(Rd);  n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);  setflags = !InITBlock();
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
SUBS{<q>}  {<Rd>,} <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`S` The instruction updates the flags.

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is the same as `<Rn>`.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` The register that is used as the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    shifted = Shift(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(R[n], NOT(shifted), '1');
    R[d] = result;
    if setflags then
        APSR.N = result<31>;
        APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
        APSR.C = carry;
        APSR.V = overflow;
```

Exceptions

None.

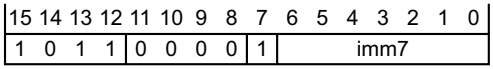
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.67 SUB (SP minus immediate)

This instruction subtracts an immediate value from the SP value, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
SUB SP,SP,#<imm7>
```




```
d = 13;  setflags = FALSE;  imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm7:'00', 32);
```

Assembler syntax

```
SUB{<q>}  {<Rd>,} SP, #<const>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register. If `<Rd>` is omitted, this register is SP.

`<const>` The immediate value to be added to the value obtained from SP. Permitted values are multiples of 4 in the range 0-508 for encoding T1.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (result, carry, overflow) = AddWithCarry(SP, NOT(imm32), '1');
    R[d] = result;

    // no flag setting form of the instruction supported
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.68 SVC

The Supervisor Call instruction generates a call to a system supervisor, see *Exceptions* on page B1-207 for more information. When the exception is escalated, a HardFault exception is caused.

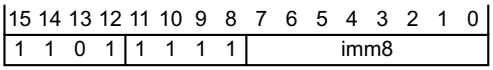
Use it as a call to an operating system to provide a service.

Note

In older versions of the ARM architecture, `SVC` was called `SWI`, Software Interrupt.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set M profile specific behavior

```
SVC #<imm8>
```




```
imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
// imm32 is for assembly/disassembly, and is ignored by hardware. SVC handlers in some
// systems interpret imm8 in software, for example to determine the required service.
```

Assembler syntax

```
SVC{<q>}  {#}<imm>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<imm>` Specifies an 8-bit immediate constant.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    CallSupervisor();
```

Exceptions

SVCall, HardFault.

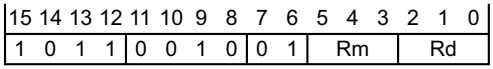
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.69 SXTB

Signed Extend Byte extracts an 8-bit value from a register, sign extends it to 32 bits, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
SXTB <Rd>,<Rm>
```



15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	Rm			Rd		

```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = 0;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SXTB{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d] = SignExtend(rotated<7:0>, 32);
```

Exceptions

None.

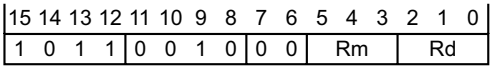
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.70 SXTH

Signed Extend Halfword extracts a 16-bit value from a register, sign extends it to 32 bits, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
SXTH <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = 0;
```

Assembler syntax

```
SXTH{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d] = SignExtend(rotated<15:0>, 32);
```

Exceptions

None.

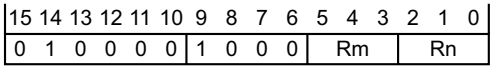
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.71 TST (register)

Test (register) performs a logical AND operation on two register values. It updates the condition flags based on the result, and discards the result.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

```
TST <Rn>,<Rm>
```




```
n = UInt(Rn);  m = UInt(Rm);
(shift_t, shift_n) = (SRType_LSL, 0);
```

Assembler syntax

```
TST{<q>}  <Rn>, <Rm>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rn>` The register that contains the first operand.

`<Rm>` The register that is used as the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    (shifted, carry) = Shift_C(R[m], shift_t, shift_n, APSR.C);
    result = R[n] AND shifted;
    APSR.N = result<31>;
    APSR.Z = IsZeroBit(result);
    APSR.C = carry;
    // APSR.V unchanged
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.72 UDF

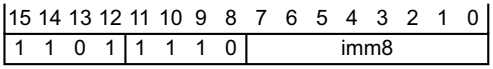
Permanently Undefined generates an Undefined Instruction exception.

Note

The encodings for UDF are defined as permanently undefined in the versions of the architecture specified in this section. Issue C of this manual first defines an assembler mnemonic for these encodings.

Encoding T1 All versions of the Thumb instruction set.

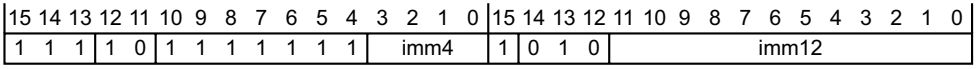
```
UDF #<imm8>
```




```
imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm8, 32);
// imm32 is for assembly and disassembly only, and is ignored by hardware.
```

Encoding T2 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
UDF.W #<imm16>
```




```
imm32 = ZeroExtend(imm4:imm12, 32);
// imm32 is for assembly and disassembly only, and is ignored by hardware.
```

Assembler syntax

```
UDF{<q>} {#}<imm>
```

where:

{<q>} See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

<imm> Specifies an immediate constant, that is 8-bit in encoding T1, and 16-bit in encoding T2. The processor ignores the value of this constant.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    UNDEFINED;
```

Exceptions

Undefined Instruction.

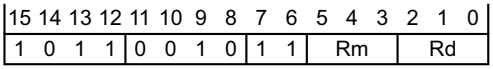
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.73 UXTB

Unsigned Extend Byte extracts an 8-bit value from a register, zero extends it to 32 bits, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
UXTB <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = 0;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UXTB{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d] = ZeroExtend(rotated<7:0>, 32);
```

Exceptions

None.

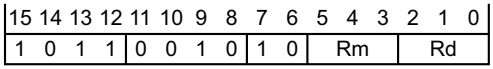
Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.74 UXTH

Unsigned Extend Halfword extracts a 16-bit value from a register, zero extends it to 32 bits, and writes the result to the destination register.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
UXTH <Rd>,<Rm>
```




```
d = UInt(Rd);  m = UInt(Rm);  rotation = 0;
```

Assembler syntax

```
UXTH{<q>}  <Rd>, <Rm>
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

`<Rd>` The destination register.

`<Rm>` The register that contains the second operand.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    rotated = ROR(R[m], rotation);
    R[d] = ZeroExtend(rotated<15:0>, 32);
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.75 WFE

Wait For Event is a hint instruction that permits the processor to enter a low-power state until one of a number of events occurs, including events signaled by the SEV instruction on any processor in a multiprocessor system. For more information, see *Wait For Event and Send Event* on page B1-241.

For general hint behavior, see *Hint Instructions* on page A6-104.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
WFE
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Assembler syntax

```
WFE{<q>}
```

where:

{<q>} See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    if EventRegistered() then
        ClearEventRegister();
    else
        WaitForEvent();
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A6.7.76 WFI

Wait For Interrupt is a hint instruction that suspends execution until one of a number of events occurs. For more information, see *Wait For Interrupt* on page B1-243.

For general hint behavior, see *Hint Instructions* on page A6-104.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

```
WFI
```

15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0

```
// No additional decoding required
```

Assembler syntax

```
WFI{<q>}
```

where:

`{<q>}` See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    WaitForInterrupt();
```

Exceptions

None.

Notes

PRIMASK If PRIMASK.PM is set to 1, an asynchronous exception that has a higher group priority than any active exception results in a `WFI` instruction exit. If the group priority of the exception is less than or equal to the execution group priority, the exception is ignored.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

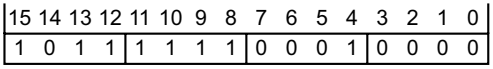
A6.7.77 YIELD

YIELD is a hint instruction. It enables software with a multithreading capability to indicate to the hardware that it is performing a task, for example a spinlock, that could be swapped out to improve overall system performance. Hardware can use this hint to suspend and resume multiple code threads if it supports the capability.

For general hint behavior, see *Hint Instructions* on page A6-104.

Encoding T1 ARMv6-M, ARMv7-M

YIELD




```
// No additional decoding required
```

Assembler syntax

```
YIELD{<q>}
```

where:

{<q>} See *Standard assembler syntax fields* on page A6-98.

Operation

```
if ConditionPassed() then
    EncodingSpecificOperations();
    Hint_Yield();
```

Exceptions

None.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Part B

System Level Architecture

Chapter B1
System Level Programmers' Model

This chapter provides a system-level view of the ARMv6-M programmers' model. It contains the following sections:

- *Introduction to the system level* on page B1-204
- *About the ARMv6-M memory mapped architecture* on page B1-205
- *Overview of system level terminology and operation* on page B1-206
- *Registers* on page B1-211
- *ARMv6-M exception model* on page B1-218.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B1.1 Introduction to the system level

The ARM architecture defines a hierarchy for software operation:

- The lowest level is the application level, described in part A of this manual. In particular, Chapter A2 *Application Level Programmers' Model* describes the programmers' model for applications. Application-level software is largely independent of the architecture profile.
- The higher level is the system level, that includes support for the applications. The system level features and how they are supported, are significantly different between the different architecture profiles.

Part B of this manual describes the ARMv6-M architecture at the system level.

As stated in *Privileged execution* on page A2-30, ARMv6-M supports unprivileged and privileged operation, or privileged operation only, depending on whether the implementation includes the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension. System level support requires privileged access, giving system software the access permissions required to configure and control the resources. Typically, an operating system provides system services to the applications, either transparently, or through application initiated supervisor calls. The operating system is also responsible for servicing interrupts and other system events, making exceptions a key component of the system level programmers' model. In a system that supports only privileged execution, application code can raise a supervisor call using `SVC`, or handle system access and control directly. ARMv6-M with the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension also supports a software model of unprivileged applications running under a privileged OS.

The ARMv6-M Debug Extension supports a Debug state, halting debug, and associated control and configuration registers, see Chapter C1 *ARMv6-M Debug* for more information.

The optional ARMv6-M *Protected Memory System Architecture* (PMSA) Extension and its *Memory Protection Unit* (MPU) protects the system memory space, see *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv6* on page B3-289

ARMv6-M also supports an optional system timer, SysTick, see *The system timer, SysTick* on page B3-275.

Note

- In deeply embedded systems, particularly at low cost or performance points, there might be no clear distinction between an operating system and the applications, and software might be developed as a homogeneous codebase.
- Appendix B *Deprecated and Obsolete Features* describes deprecated features of the ARMv6-M profile.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B1.2 About the ARMv6-M memory mapped architecture

ARMv6-M is a memory-mapped architecture, meaning the architecture assigns physical addresses for processor registers to provide:

- exception entry points, as vectors
- system control and configuration.

An ARMv6-M implementation maintains exception handler entry points in a table of address pointers.

The architecture reserves address space `0xE0000000` to `0xFFFFFFFF` for system level use. ARM reserves the first 1MB of this system address space, `0xE0000000` to `0xE00FFFFF`, as the *Private Peripheral Bus* (PPB). The assignment of the rest of the address space, from `0xE0100000` is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED with some memory attribute restrictions. See *The system address map* on page B3-258 for more information.

In the PPB address space, the architecture assigns a 4kB block `0xE000E000` to `0xE000EFFF`, as the SCS. The SCS supports:

- processor ID registers
- general control and configuration, including the vector table base address
- system handler support, for system interrupts and exceptions
- an optional system timer, SysTick
- a *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller* (NVIC), that supports up to 32 discrete external interrupts
- processor debug, optional in ARMv6-M
- MPU registers, in systems that implement the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension.

See *System Control Space (SCS)* on page B3-262 for more details.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B1.3 Overview of system level terminology and operation

The following sections describe the concepts that are central to the system level architecture.

B1.3.1 Modes, privilege and stacks

Mode, privilege and stack pointer are key concepts used in ARMv6-M.

Mode An M-profile processor supports two operating modes:

Thread mode

Is entered on Reset, and can be entered as a result of an exception return.

Handler mode

Is entered as a result of an exception. The processor must be in Handler mode to issue an exception return.

Privilege If an ARMv6-M system does not implement the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension, all execution is privileged. Privileged execution has access to all resources.

If an ARMv6-M system implements the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension, software can execute as privileged or unprivileged. Unprivileged execution has limited or no access to some resources.

Execution in Handler mode is always privileged. The value of CONTROL.nPRIV determines whether execution in Thread mode is privileged or unprivileged.

Stack Pointer The processor implements a banked pair of stack pointers, the Main Stack Pointer, and the Process Stack Pointer. See *The SP registers* on page B1-211 for more information.

In Handler mode, the processor uses the Main Stack Pointer. In Thread mode it can use either stack pointer.

Table B1-1 shows the possible combinations of mode, privilege and stack pointer usage.

Table B1-1 Mode, privilege and stack relationship

Mode	Privilege	Stack pointer	Typical usage model
Handler	Privileged	Main	Exception handling.
Thread	Privileged	Main	Execution of a privileged process or thread using a common stack in a system that only supports privileged access.
		Process	Execution of a privileged process or thread using a stack reserved for that process or thread in a system that only supports privileged access.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B1-1 Mode, privilege and stack relationship (continued)

Mode	Privilege	Stack pointer	Typical usage model
Thread	Unprivileged[a]	Main	Execution of an unprivileged process or thread using a common stack in a system that supports privileged and unprivileged access.
		Process	Execution of an unprivileged process or thread using a stack reserved for that process or thread in a system that supports privileged and unprivileged access.

a. Only available with the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension.

Pseudocode detail of processor operating mode

The `CurrentModeIsPrivileged()` pseudocode function determines whether the current software execution is privileged:

```
// CurrentModeIsPrivileged()
// =========================

boolean CurrentModeIsPrivileged()
    return (CurrentMode == Mode_Handler || CONTROL.nPRIV == '0');
```

B1.3.2 Exceptions

An exception is a condition that changes the normal flow of control in a program. Exception behavior splits into two stages:

Exception generation

When an exception event occurs and is presented to the processor

Exception processing, or activation

When the processor follows a sequence of exception entry, exception handler code execution, and exception return. The transition from exception generation to exception processing can be instantaneous.

ARMv6-M defines the following exception categories

Reset Reset is a special form of exception that, when asserted, terminates current execution in a potentially unrecoverable way. When reset is deasserted, execution restarts from a fixed point.

Supervisor call (SVCall)

An exception caused explicitly by the `SVC` instruction. Application software uses the `SVC` instruction to make a call to an underlying operating system. This is called a Supervisor call. The `SVC` instruction enables the application to issue a Supervisor call that requires privileged

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

access to the system and executes in program order relative to the application. ARMv6-M also supports an interrupt-driven Supervisor calling mechanism PendSV. See *Interrupts* in *Overview of the exceptions supported* on page B1-218 for more information.

Fault A fault is an exception that results from an error condition in instruction execution. A fault can be reported synchronously or asynchronously to the instruction that caused it. In general, faults are reported synchronously.

A synchronous fault is always reported with the instruction that caused the fault. The architecture makes no guarantee about how an asynchronous fault is reported relative to the instruction that caused the fault. Faults are considered fatal in ARMv6-M, in that no fault status information is provided to assist recovery.

Interrupt An interrupt is an exception, other than a reset, fault or a supervisor call. All interrupts are asynchronous to the instruction stream. Typically interrupts are used by other components of the system that must communicate with the processor. This can include software running on another processor in the system.

Each exception has:

- A priority level
- An exception number
- A vector in memory that defines the entry-point for execution on taking the exception. The value held in a vector is the address of the entry point of the exception handler, or *Interrupt Service Routine* (ISR).

An exception, other than reset, has the following possible states:

Inactive An exception that is not pending or active.

Pending An exception that has been generated, but that the processor has not yet started processing. An exception is generated when the corresponding exception event occurs.

Active An exception for which the processor has started executing a corresponding exception handler, but has not returned from that handler. The handler for an active exception is either running or preempted by a the handler for a higher priority exception.

Active and pending

One instance of the exception is active, and a second instance of the exception is pending.

Only asynchronous exceptions can be active and pending. Any synchronous exception is either inactive, pending, or active.

Priority levels, execution priority, exception entry, and execution preemption

Exception priorities determine the order in which the processor handles exceptions:

- Every exception has a priority level, the exception priority. Three exceptions have fixed priorities, while all others have a priority that can be configured by privileged software.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

- The instruction stream executing on the processor has a priority level associated with it, the execution priority.
- The execution priority immediately after a reset is the base level of execution priority. Only execution in Thread mode can be at this base level of execution priority.
- An exception whose exception priority is sufficiently higher than the execution priority becomes active. The concept of sufficiently higher priority relates to priority grouping, see *Priority grouping* on page B1-222.

Software can boost the execution priority using the PRIMASK register provided for this purpose, otherwise the execution priority is the highest priority of all the active exceptions, see *Execution priority and priority boosting* on page B1-222 for more information.

When an exception becomes active because its priority is sufficiently higher that the executing priority:

- its exception handler preempts the currently running instruction stream
- its priority becomes the executing priority

When an exception other that reset preempts an instruction stream, the processor automatically saves key context information onto the stack, and execution branches to the code pointed to by the corresponding exception vector.

An exception can occur during exception activation, for example as a result of a memory fault when pushing context information. Also, the architecture permits the optimization of a late-arriving exception. *Exceptions on exception entry* on page B1-232 describes the behavior of these cases.

The processor always runs an exception handler in Handler mode. If the exception preempts software running in Thread mode the processor changes to handler mode as part of the exception entry.

Exception Return

The processor executes the exception handler in Handler mode, and returns from the handler. On exception return:

- If the exception state is active and pending:
  - if the exception has sufficient priority, it becomes active and the processor re-enters the exception handler
  - otherwise, it becomes pending.
- If the exception state is active it becomes inactive.
- The processor restores the information that it stacked on exception entry.
- If the code that was preempted by the exception handler was running in Thread mode, the processor changes to Thread mode.
- The processor resumes execution of the code that was preempted by the exception handler.

The Exception Return Link, a value stored in the link register on exception entry, determines the target of the exception return.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

On an exception return, there can be a pending exception with sufficient priority to preempt the execution being returned to. This results in an exception entry sequence immediately after the exception return sequence. This condition is referred to as chaining of the exceptions. Hardware can optimize chaining of exceptions to remove the requirement to restore and re-save the key context state, an optimization referred to as *tail-chaining*. See *Exceptions on exception return, and tail-chaining exceptions* on page B1-233 for details.

Faults can occur during the exception return, for example as a result of a memory fault when popping previous state off the stack. The behavior in this and other cases is explained in *Derived exceptions on exception entry* on page B1-233.

B1.3.3 Execution state

ARMv6-M only executes Thumb instructions, both 16-bit and a few 32-bit instructions. This means it is always executing in Thumb state. The ARMv6 architecture profile uses a value of 1 for an execution status bit, the EPSR.T to indicate execution in Thumb state, see *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-212. ARMv6-M is consistent with the software programming model and interworking support of additional execution states in other ARM architecture profiles. Setting EPSR.T to zero in an ARMv6-M processor causes a fault when the next instruction executes, because all instructions in this state are UNDEFINED.

B1.3.4 Debug state

A processor enters Debug state if it is configured to halt on a debug event, and a debug event occurs. See Chapter C1 *ARMv6-M Debug* for more details.

Note

Debug state is part of the Debug Extension for ARMv6-M.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B1.4 Registers

The ARMv6-M profile has the following registers closely coupled to the processor:

- General purpose registers R0-R12.
- Two Stack Pointer registers, SP_main and SP_process. These are banked versions of SP, also described as R13.
- The Link Register, LR also described as R14.
- The Program Counter, PC, sometimes described as R15.
- Status registers for flags, execution state bits, and the current exception number.
- A mask register, PRIMASK, used to manage the prioritization scheme for exceptions and interrupts.
- A control register, CONTROL that identifies the current stack.

All other registers described in this specification are memory mapped.

Note

Where this part of the manual gives register access restrictions, these apply to normal execution. Debug restrictions can differ, see *General rules applying to debug register access* on page C1-318, *Debug Core Register Selector Register, DCRSR* on page C1-335 and *Debug Core Register Data Register, DCRDR* on page C1-337.

B1.4.1 The ARM core registers

The registers R0-R12, SP, LR, and PC are named the ARM core registers. These registers can be described as R0-R15.

The SP registers

An ARMv6-M processor implements two stacks:

- the Main stack, SP_main or MSP
- the Process stack, SP_process or PSP.

The active stack pointer is one of the banked stack pointers, SP_main and SP_process. The current stack depends on the mode and, in Thread mode, the value of the CONTROL.SPSEL bit, see *The special-purpose CONTROL register* on page B1-215. A reset selects and initializes SP_main, see *Reset behavior* on page B1-224.

For maximum portability across other profiles, ARM strongly recommends that software treats SP bits [1:0] as SBZP.

The stack pointer that is used in exception entry and exit is described in the pseudocode sequences of the exception entry and exit, see *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-224 and *Exception return behavior* on page B1-227 for more details. SP_main is selected and initialized on reset, see *Reset behavior* on page B1-224.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B1.4.2 The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR

The *Program Status Register* (PSR) is a 32-bit register that comprises three subregisters:

Application Program Status Register, APSR

Holds flags that can be written by application-level software, that is, by unprivileged software. APSR handling of application-level writeable flags by the `MSR` and `MRS` instructions is consistent across ARMv6T2, ARMv6-M, and all ARMv7 profiles.

Interrupt Program Status Register, IPSR

When the processor is executing an exception handler, holds the exception number of the exception being processed. Otherwise, the IPSR value is zero.

Execution Program Status Register, EPSR

Holds execution state bits.

Software can use the `MRS` and `MSR` instructions.to access the complete PSR, or any combination of one or more of the subregisters, although there are restrictions on viewing and modifying some fields. xPSR is a generic term for a program status register. All unused bits in any individual or combined xPSR are Reserved.

Figure B1-1 shows how the APSR, IPSR, and EPSR combine to form the PSR.

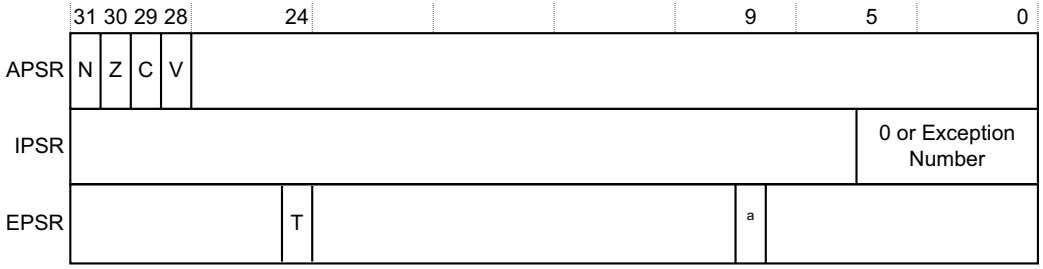


Figure B1-1 xPSR register layout

Note

EPSR [9] is reserved, but when the processor stacks the PSR, it uses this bit to indicate the stack alignment, see *Stack alignment on exception entry* on page B1-227.

The APSR

Flag setting instructions modify the APSR flags N, Z, C, and V, and the processor uses these flags to evaluate conditional branch instructions. *The Application Program Status Register* on page A2-38 describes the flags. The flags are UNKNOWN on reset.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

The IPSR

The processor updates the IPSR on exception entry and exit. Software can use an MRS instruction to read the IPSR, but the processor ignores writes to the IPSR by an MSR instruction. The IPSR Exception Number field is defined as follows:

- in Thread mode, the value is 0
- in Handler mode, holds the exception number of the currently-executing exception, see *Exception number definition* on page B1-220 and *The vector table* on page B1-220.

On reset, the processor is in Thread mode and the Exception Number field of the IPSR is set to 0. As a result, the value 1, the Reset Exception Number, is a transitory value, that software cannot see as a valid IPSR Exception Number.

The EPSR

The EPSR contains the T-bit, that indicates whether the processor is in Thumb state. The T-bit cannot be read by software. See *Debug Core Register Data Register, DCRDR* on page C1-337 for information about debug state access.

All fields Read-As-Zero using an MRS instruction, and the processor ignores writes to the EPSR by an MSR instruction.

The EPSR T-bit supports the ARM architecture interworking model, however, because ARMv6-M only supports execution of Thumb instructions, it must always be maintained with the value 1. Updates to the PC that comply with the Thumb instruction interworking rules must update EPSR.T accordingly. Instruction execution with EPSR.T set to 0 generates a HardFault.

A reset sets the T bit to the value of bit [0] of the reset vector. This bit must be 1 if the processor is to execute the code indicated by the reset vector. If this bit is 0, the processor takes a HardFault exception and enters the HardFault handler, with the stacked ReturnAddress() value pointing to the reset handler, and the T bit of the stacked xPSR value set to 0, see *Reset behavior* on page B1-224.

All unused bits in the individual or combined registers are reserved.

Composite views of the xPSR registers

The MSR and MRS instructions recognize APSR, IPSR, and EPSR as mnemonics for the corresponding registers. It also recognizes mnemonics for different combinations of the registers, as Table B1-2 shows:

Table B1-2 Mnemonics for combinations of xPSR registers

Mnemonic	Registers accessed
IAPSR	IPSR and APSR

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B1-2 Mnemonics for combinations of xPSR registers (continued)

Mnemonic	Registers accessed
EAPSR	EPSR and APSR
XPSR	All three xPSR registers
IEPSR	IPSR and EPSR

See *Special register encodings used in ARMv6-M system instructions* on page B4-304 for more information.

B1.4.3 The special-purpose mask register, PRIMASK

The processor can use the exception mask register PRIMASK, that is used for priority boosting. PRIMASK is a special-purpose mask register,

Figure B1-2 shows the format of the PRIMASK register.

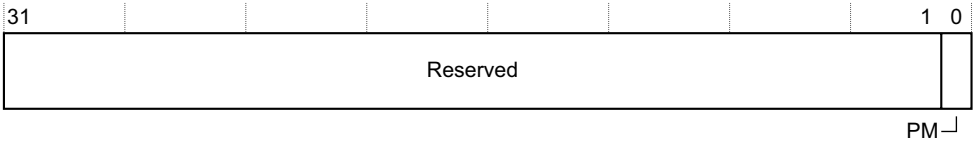


Figure B1-2 PRIMASK register bit assignments

PRIMASK.PM is set to 0 on reset. Where the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension is implemented, the processor ignores unprivileged writes to the mask registers.

Software can access this register using the `MSR` or `MRS` instructions, see *MRS* on page B4-308 and *MSR (register)* on page B4-310 for more information.

In addition:

- Executing the instruction `CPSID i` sets PRIMASK.PM to 1
- Executing the instruction `CPSIE i` sets PRIMASK.PM to 0.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B1.4.4 The special-purpose CONTROL register

The special-purpose CONTROL register is a 2-bit special-purpose register defined as follows:

nPRIV, bit[0] If the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension is implemented, defines the execution privilege in Thread mode:

- **0** Thread mode has privileged access
- **1** Thread mode has unprivileged access.

Note

- In Handler mode, execution is always privileged.
- If the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension is not implemented, bit[0] is RAZ/WI.

SPSEL, bit[1] Defines the stack to be used:

- **0** Use SP_main as the current stack
- **1** In Thread mode, use SP_process as the current stack.
  In Handler mode, this value is reserved.

bits[31:2] Reserved on `MRS` and `MSR` accesses.

Software can update the SPSEL bit in privileged Thread mode. In Handler mode, the processor ignores explicit writes to the SPSEL bit.

A reset clears the CONTROL register to zero. Software can use the `MRS` instruction to read the register, and the `MSR` instruction to write to the register. Unprivileged write accesses are ignored.

The processor updates the SPSEL bit on exception entry and exception return, see the pseudocode in *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-224 and *Exception return behavior* on page B1-227 for more information.

Software must use an ISB barrier instruction to ensure a write to the CONTROL register takes effect before the next instruction is executed.

B1.4.5 Reserved special-purpose register bits

All unused bits in special-purpose registers are reserved. The architecture defines these reserved bits as RAZ/WI for `MRS` and `MSR` instruction accesses. However, for future compatibility, ARM recommends that software treats reserved bits as UNK/SBZP.

B1.4.6 Special-purpose register updates and the memory order model

Except for writes to the CONTROL register, any change to a special-purpose register by a `CPS` or `MSR` instruction is guaranteed:

- not to affect that `CPS` or `MSR` instruction or any instruction that precedes it in program order
- to be visible to all instructions that appear in program order after that `CPS` or `MSR` instruction.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B1.4.7 Register-related definitions for pseudocode

The system programmers' model pseudocode uses two register types:

- 32-bit core registers, see *The ARM core registers* on page B1-211
- 32-bit memory mapped registers.

Appendix G *Register Index* lists the ARMv6-M registers.

This manual describes register bit fields as `<register_name>.<bitfield_name>` or by a specific bit reference, for example:

- `AIRCR<2>` is equivalent to `AIRCR.SYSRESETREQ`
- `ICSR<8:0>` is equivalent to `VECTACTIVE`.

Normally this manual uses the field names.

Pseudocode details for ARM core register access

The following pseudocode supports access to the general-purpose registers for the operations defined in *Alphabetical list of ARMv6-M Thumb instructions* on page A6-105:

```
// The M-profile execution modes.

enumeration Mode {Mode_Thread, Mode_Handler};

// The physical array of core registers R0 to R12.

array bits(32) _R[0..12];

// Physical storage for the two banked stack pointers, link register
// and program counter.

bits(32) SP_process;
bits(32) SP_main;
bits(32) LR;
bits(32) PC;


// R[] - non-assignment form
// =========================

bits(32) R[integer n]
    assert n >= 0 && n <= 15;
    if n == 15 then
        result = PC + 4;
    elsif n == 14 then
        result = LR;
    elsif n == 13 then
        result = if CONTROL.SPSEL == '1' then SP_process else SP_main;
    else
        result = _R[n];
    return result;
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
// R[] - assignment form
// =====================

R[integer n] = bits(32) value
    assert n >= 0 && n <= 14;
    if n == 14 then
        LR = value;
    elsif n == 13 then
        if CONTROL.SPSEL == '1' then
            SP_process = value<31:2>:'00';
        else
            SP_main = value<31:2>:'00';
    else
        _R[n] = value;
    return;

// BranchTo()
// ==========

BranchTo(bits(32) address)
    PC = address;
    return;
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B1.5 ARMv6-M exception model

The exception model is central to the architecture and system correctness in the ARMv6-M profile. The ARMv6-M profile is the same as ARMv7-M in using hardware saving and restoring of key context state on exception entry and exit, and using a table of vectors to determine the exception entry points. In addition, the exception categorization in the ARMv6-M profile is a subset of those provided in ARMv7-M.

The following sections describe the ARMv6-M exception model:

- *Overview of the exceptions supported*
- *Exception number definition* on page B1-220
- *The vector table* on page B1-220
- *Exception priorities and preemption* on page B1-221
- *Reset behavior* on page B1-224
- *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-224
- *Stack alignment on exception entry* on page B1-227
- *Exception return behavior* on page B1-227
- *Exceptions in single-word load operations* on page B1-231
- *Exceptions in Load Multiple and Store Multiple operations* on page B1-231
- *Exceptions on exception entry* on page B1-232
- *Exceptions on exception return, and tail-chaining exceptions* on page B1-233
- *Exception status and control* on page B1-235
- *Fault behavior* on page B1-236
- *Unrecoverable exception cases* on page B1-238
- *Reset management* on page B1-240
- *Power management* on page B1-240
- *Wait For Event and Send Event* on page B1-241
- *Wait For Interrupt* on page B1-243.

B1.5.1 Overview of the exceptions supported

The ARMv6-M profile supports the following exceptions:

Reset The ARMv6-M profile supports two levels of reset. The reset level determines the register bit fields that are forced to their reset values on the deassertion of reset.

- Power-on reset resets the processor, SCS and debug logic.
- Local reset resets the processor and SCS except for debug-related resources. For more details, see *Debug and reset* on page C1-323.

The Reset exception is permanently enabled with a fixed priority of -3.

NMI *NMI* (Non Maskable Interrupt) is the highest priority exception other than reset. It is permanently enabled with a fixed priority of -2.

Hardware can generate an NMI, or software can set the NMI exception to the Pending state, see *Interrupt Control State Register, ICSR* on page B3-265, or hardware.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

HardFault HardFault is the generic fault that exists for all classes of fault that cannot be handled by any of the other exception mechanisms. Typically, HardFault is used for unrecoverable system failures, although this is not required, and some uses of HardFault might be recoverable. HardFault is permanently enabled with a fixed priority of -1.

HardFault is used for all fault conditions on ARMv6-M.

SVCall This supervisor call handles the exception caused by the `SVC` instruction. SVCall is permanently enabled and has a configurable priority.

Interrupts The ARMv6-M profile supports two system level interrupts and up to 32 external interrupts. Each interrupt has a configurable priority. The system-level interrupts are:

PendSV Used for software-generated supervisor calls. An application uses a supervisor call, if it requires servicing by the underlying operating system. The supervisor call associated with PendSV executes when the processor takes the PendSV interrupt.

Note

For a supervisor call that executes synchronously to program execution, software must use the `SVC` instruction. This generates an SVCall exception.

PendSV is permanently enabled, and is controlled using the ICSR.PENDSVSET and ICSR.PENDSVCLR bits, see *Interrupt Control State Register, ICSR* on page B3-265

SysTick Generated by the SysTick timer and controlled using the ICSR.PENDSTSET and ICSR.PENDSTCLR bits. SysTick is an integral component of an ARMv7-M processor, and is optional in ARMv6-M.

Note

Software can suppress hardware generation of the SysTick event, but ICSR.PENDSTSET and ICSR.PENDSTCLR are always available to software, see *Interrupt Control State Register, ICSR* on page B3-265.

Software can disable all external interrupts, and can set or clear the pending state of any interrupt. Interrupts other than PendSV can be set to the Pending state by hardware.

See *Fault behavior* on page B1-236 for a definitive list of all the possible causes of faults. ARMv6-M does not support run-time fault status register bits to identify the faults.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B1.5.2 Exception number definition

Each exception has an associated exception number as Table B1-3 shows.

Table B1-3 Exception numbers

Exception number	Exception
1	Reset
2	NMI
3	HardFault
4-10	Reserved
11	SVCall
12-13	Reserved
14	PendSV
15	SysTick, optional
16	External Interrupt(0)
…	…
16 + N	External Interrupt(N)

B1.5.3 The vector table

The vector table contains the initialization value for the stack pointer on reset, and the entry point addresses for all exception handlers. The exception number, defined in Table B1-3, also defines the order of entries in the vector table, as Table B1-4 shows.

Table B1-4 Vector table format

Word offset in table	Description, for all pointer address values
0	SP_main. This is the reset value of the Main stack pointer.
Exception Number	Exception using that Exception Number

Depending on the implementation, the vector table base is adjustable. The range of values that the VTOR can accept is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. Implementations not providing configurability of the table base provide a VTOR with RAZ/WI behavior. See *Vector Table Offset Register, VTOR* on page B3-267 for more information.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Note

For implementations that do not support the VTOR register, the VTOR register space defined in ARMv7-M is reserved, RAZ/WI.

The table offset address that VTOR defines is 32-word aligned. Where more than 16 external interrupts are used, the offset word alignment must be increased to accommodate vectors for all the exceptions and interrupts supported and keep the required table size naturally aligned.

The entry at offset 0 is used to initialize the value for SP_main, see *The SP registers* on page B1-211. All other entries must have bit [0] set to 1, because the bit defines the EPSR T-bit on exception entry, see *Reset behavior* on page B1-224 and *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-224 for details. On exception entry, if bit [0] of the associated vector table entry is 0, execution of the first instruction causes a HardFault.

B1.5.4 Exception priorities and preemption

In the ARMv6-M priority model, lower numbers take precedence. That is, the lower the assigned priority value, the higher the priority level. The priority order for exceptions with the same priority level is fixed, and is determined by their exception number.

Reset, NMI, and HardFault execute at fixed priorities of -3, -2, and -1 respectively. Software can set the priority of all other exceptions using registers in the SCS. A reset clears these software-configured priority settings. Software-assigned priority values start at 0, so Reset, NMI, and HardFault always have higher priorities than any other exception.

When multiple pending exceptions have the same priority number, the pending exception with the lowest exception number takes precedence. When an exception is active, only an exception with a higher priority can preempt it.

ARMv6-M supports 2-bit priority fields, providing four priority levels.

Note

ARMv7-M supports 8-bit priority fields. The ARMv6-M 2-bit priority fields correspond to the most-significant two bits of the ARMv7-M priority fields

If software changes the priority of an exception when it is active or enabled, the effect is UNPREDICTABLE in ARMv6-M.

Note

The *not enabled* condition does not apply to the permanently enabled SVCall or PendSV exceptions. It applies to all cases where the configurable priority exception can be disabled in software.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Priority grouping

Priority grouping is a method of assigning a configurable number of the least significant priority bits so that they are ignored when determining the highest priority pending exception. The effect is to group the affected exceptions under a common priority defined by the remaining, most significant, priority bits. ARMv6-M does not support configurable priority grouping, meaning that all supported priority bits are always used for the group priority when detecting the highest pending exception.

When two pending exceptions have the same group priority, the lower pending exception number has priority over the higher pending number as part of the priority precedence rule.

The group priorities of Reset, NMI and HardFault are -3, -2, and -1 respectively.

Execution priority and priority boosting

The execution priority is defined as the highest priority determined from:

- the highest priority of all active exceptions
- the impact of PRIMASK and priority boosting.

Note

Changing the priority of an active exception is UNPREDICTABLE.

Setting the mask bit in the PRIMASK register to 1 raises the execution priority to 0. This prevents any exceptions with configurable priority from activating, except through the fault escalation mechanism, see *Priority escalation* on page B1-223,.This also affects `WFI`, see *WFI* on page A6-198.

Note

In ARMv6-M, Thread mode has an implicit priority of the lowest priority in the system. Thread mode executes when there are no pending or active exceptions.

The `ExecutionPriority()` pseudocode function defines the execution priority, where the `ExceptionPriority[]` array defines the priority of each exception.

```
// ExecutionPriority()
// ===================

// Determine the current execution priority

bit ExceptionActive[*]; // Exception handler active state
                        // See TakeReset() for more information

integer ExecutionPriority()

    highestpri = 4;     // Priority of Thread mode with no active exceptions
                        // The value is PriorityMax + 1 = 4
                        // (configurable priority bit field is 2 bits)
    boostedpri = 4;     // Priority influence of PRIMASK
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
    for (i=2, i<48, i=i+1)   ; IPSR values of the exception handlers
        if ExceptionActive[i] == '1' then
            if ExceptionPriority[i] < highestpri then
                highestpri = ExceptionPriority[i];

    if PRIMASK.PM == '1' then
        boostedpri = 0;

    if boostedpri < highestpri then
        priority = boostedpri;
    else
        priority = highestpri;

    return (priority);

// ExceptionPriority[], non-assignment form
// ========================================

integer ExceptionPriority[integer n]
    assert n >= 2 && n <= 48;
    if n == 2 then
        result = -2;                        // NMI
    elsif n == 1 then
        result = -1;                        // HardFault
    elsif n == 11 then
        result = UInt(SHPR2.PRI_11);        // SVCall
    elsif n == 14 then
        result = UInt(SHPR3.PRI_14);        // PendSV
    elsif n == 15 then
        result = UInt(SHPR3.PRI_15);        // SysTick
    elsif n >= 16 then
        r = (n - 16) DIV 4;
        v = n MOD 4;
        result = UInt(NVIC_IPR:r.PRI_N:v); // External interrupt (n-16)
    else
        result = 4;                         // Reserved exceptions

    return result;
```

Priority escalation

When the group priority of a supervisor call, SVCall, is lower than or equal to the currently executing group priority, inhibiting normal preemption, a HardFault exception is taken. This is known as *priority escalation*.

Note

Priority escalation applies when the currently executing group priority is less than HardFault. If an exception occurs at a currently executing group priority of HardFault or higher, the behavior is defined in *Unrecoverable exception cases* on page B1-238.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A fault that is escalated to a HardFault retains the `ReturnAddress()` behavior of the original fault. See the pseudocode definition of `ReturnAddress()` in *Exception entry behavior* for more details. For the behavior of the affected exceptions occurring when the currently executing group priority is that of a HardFault or higher, see *Unrecoverable exception cases* on page B1-238.

B1.5.5 Reset behavior

Asserting reset causes the processor to abandon the current execution state without saving it. On the deassertion of reset, all registers that have a defined reset value contain that value, and the processor performs the actions described by the `TakeReset()` pseudocode.

For global declarations see *Register-related definitions for pseudocode* on page B1-216.

```
// TakeReset()
// ============

bit ExceptionActive[*];             // Conceptual array of 1-bit values for all exceptions
bits(32) vectortable = VTOR;
Mode CurrentMode;

TakeReset()
    R[0..12] = bits(32) UNKNOWN;
    SP_main = MemA[vectortable,4] & 0xFFFFFFFC;
    SP_process = ((bits(30) UNKNOWN):'00');
    LR = bits(32) UNKNOWN;              // Value must be initialised by software
    CurrentMode = Mode_Thread;
    APSR = bits(32) UNKNOWN;            // Flags UNPREDICTABLE from reset
    IPSR<5:0> = 0x0;                    // Exception number clearedat reset
    PRIMASK.PM = '0';                   // Priority mask cleared at reset
    CONTROL.SPSEL = '0';                // Current stack is Main
    CONTROL.nPRIV = '0';                // Thread is privileged
    ResetSCSRegs();                     // Catch-all function for System Control Space reset
    ExceptionActive[*] = '0';           // All exceptions Inactive
    ClearEventRegister();               // See WFE instruction for more information
    start = MemA[vectortable+4,4];      // Load address of reset routine
    BLXWritePC(start);                  // Start execution of reset routine
```

`ExceptionActive[*]` is a conceptual array of active flag bits for all exceptions, meaning it has active flags for the fixed priority system exceptions, configurable priority system exceptions, and external interrupts. *Pseudocode details of the Wait For Event lock mechanism* on page B1-243 defines the `ClearEventRegister()` pseudocode function. *ResetSCSRegisters()* on page AppxE-407 defines the `ResetSCSRegisters()` pseudocode function.

B1.5.6 Exception entry behavior

On preemption of the instruction stream, the hardware saves context state onto a stack pointed to by one of the SP registers, see *The SP registers* on page B1-211. The stack used depends on the mode of the processor at the time of the exception.

The stacked context supports the AAPCS. This means the exception handler can be an AAPCS-compliant procedure.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

The ARMv6-M architecture uses a full-descending stack, where:

- when pushing context, the hardware decrements the stack pointer to the end of the new stack frame before it stores data onto the stack
- when popping context, the hardware reads the data from the stack frame and then increments the stack pointer.

When pushing context to the stack, the hardware saves eight 32-bit words, comprising xPSR, ReturnAddress, LR (R14), R12, R3, R2, R1, and R0

The `ExceptionEntry()` pseudocode function describes the exception entry behavior:

```
// ExceptionEntry()
// ================

// NOTE: PushStack() can abandon memory accesses if a fault occurs during the stacking
//       sequence.
//       Exception entry is modified according to the behavior of a derived exception.

PushStack();
ExceptionTaken(ExceptionType);    // ExceptionType is encoded as its exception number
```

For global declarations see *Register-related definitions for pseudocode* on page B1-216.
For a definition of `ExceptionActive[*]` see *Reset behavior* on page B1-224.
For helper functions and procedures see *Miscellaneous helper procedures and functions* on page AppxE-406.

The definitions of the `PushStack()` and `ExceptionTaken()` pseudocode functions are:

```
// PushStack()
// ===========

PushStack()
    if CONTROL.SPSEL == '1' && CurrentMode == Mode_Thread then
        frameptralign = SP_process<2>;
        SP_process = (SP_process - 0x20) AND NOT(ZeroExtend('100',32));
        frameptr = SP_process;
    else
        frameptralign = SP_main<2>;
        SP_main = (SP_main - 0x20) AND NOT(ZeroExtend('100',32));
        frameptr = SP_main;
       /* only the stack locations, not the store order, are architected */
    MemA[frameptr,4]      = R[0];
    MemA[frameptr+0x4,4]  = R[1];
    MemA[frameptr+0x8,4]  = R[2];
    MemA[frameptr+0xC,4]  = R[3];
    MemA[frameptr+0x10,4] = R[12];
    MemA[frameptr+0x14,4] = LR;
    MemA[frameptr+0x18,4] = ReturnAddress();
    MemA[frameptr+0x1C,4] = (xPSR<31:10>:frameptralign:xPSR<8:0>);
    if CurrentMode==Mode_Handler then
        LR = 0xFFFFFFF1;
    else
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
        if CONTROL.SPSEL == '0' then
            LR = 0xFFFFFFF9;
        else
            LR = 0xFFFFFFFD;
    return;

// ExceptionTaken()
// ================

ExceptionTaken(ExceptionNumber)

    for n = 0 to 3
        R[n] = bits(32) UNKNOWN;                  // Original values pushed on stack
    R[12] = bits(32) UNKNOWN;
    APSR = bits(32) UNKNOWN;
    CurrentMode = Mode_Handler;                   // Enter Handler Mode, now Privileged
    IPSR<5:0> = ExceptionNumber;                  // Update IPSR to this exception
    CONTROL.SPSEL = '0';                          // Current stack is now SP main
                                                  // CONTROL.nPRIV unchanged
    ExceptionActive[ExceptionNumber] = '1';       // Set exception as being active
    SCS_UpdateStatusRegs();                       // Update SCS registers
    SetEventRegister();                           // See WFE instruction for details
    InstructionSynchronizationBarrier();
    start = MemA[vectortable+4*ExceptionNumber,4]; // Load handler address
    BLXWritePC(start);                            // Start execution of handler
```

For the definition of `SCS_UpdateStatusRegs()` see *SCS_UpdateStatusRegs()* on page AppxE-408.

For more information about the registers with UNKNOWN values, see *Exceptions on exception entry* on page B1-232

For updates to system status registers, see section *System Control Space (SCS)* on page B3-262.
`ReturnAddress()` is the address to which execution returns after the processor has handled the exception:

```
// ReturnAddress()
// ===============

ReturnAddress() returns the following values based on the exception cause
   // NOTE: ReturnAddress() is always halfword aligned, meaning bit<0> is always zero

// Exception Type          Address returned
// ==============          ================

// NMI:                    Address of Next Instruction to be executed
// HardFault (precise):    Address of the Instruction causing fault
// HardFault (imprecise):  Address of Next Instruction to be executed
// SVC:                    Address of the Next Instruction after the SVC
// IRQ:                    Address of Next Instruction to be executed after an interrupt
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Note

- IRQ behavior also applies to the SysTick and PendSV interrupts.
- Where the priority of an SVCall is escalated, this causes a HardFault with the `ReturnAddress()` as stipulated for the `SVC` related exception.

B1.5.7 Stack alignment on exception entry

The ARMv6-M architecture guarantees that all exceptions are entered with 8-byte stack alignment. However, because exceptions can occur on any instruction boundary, it is possible that the current stack pointer is not 8-byte aligned when an exception activates.

The AAPCS requires that the stack-pointer be 8-byte aligned on entry to a conforming function. Because exception handlers are normally written as AAPCS conforming functions, the system must ensure natural alignment of the stack for all arguments passed. The 8-byte alignment requirement is guaranteed in hardware in ARMv6-M.

Note

A function that conforms to the AAPCS must preserve the natural alignment of primitive data of size 1, 2, 4, or 8 bytes. Conforming code can rely on this alignment. Normally, to support unqualified reliance the stack pointer must be 8-byte aligned on entry to a conforming function. If a function is entered directly from an underlying execution environment, that environment must accept the stack alignment requirement to guarantee unconditionally that conforming code executes correctly in all circumstances.

Theory of operation

On an exception entry, the exception entry sequence ensures that the stack pointer in use before the exception entry has 8-byte alignment, by adjusting its alignment if necessary. When the processor pushes the PSR value to the stack it uses bit[9] of the stacked PSR value to indicate whether it realigned the stack.

Note

In normal operation, PSR[9] is reserved.

On an exception return, the processor uses the value of bit [9] of the PSR value popped from the stack to determine whether it must adjust the stack pointer alignment. This reverses any forced stack alignment performed on the exception entry.

B1.5.8 Exception return behavior

An exception return occurs when the processor is in Handler mode and one of the following instructions loads a value of `0xFXXXXXXX` into the PC:

- `POP` that includes loading the PC
- `BX` with any register.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

When used in this way, the processor intercepts the value written to the PC. This value is referred to as the EXC_RETURN value. In this EXC_RETURN value:

Bits [31:28] `0xF`. This value identifies the value in a PC load as an EXC_RETURN value.

Bits [27:4] Reserved, SBOP. The effect of using a value with any bit in this field not set to 1 is UNPREDICTABLE.

Bits [3:0] Define the required exception return behavior, as Table B1-5 shows:

Table B1-5 Exception return behavior

EXC_RETURN	Behavior
`0xFFFFFFF1`	Return to Handler Mode. Exception return gets state from the Main stack. On return execution uses the Main Stack.
`0xFFFFFFF9`	Return to Thread Mode. Exception return gets state from the Main stack. On return execution uses the Main Stack.
`0xFFFFFFFD`	Return to Thread Mode. Exception return gets state from the Process stack. On return execution uses the Process Stack.
Unused	Reserved.

Note

The effect of using any EXC_RETURN value not shown in Table B1-5 is UNPREDICTABLE.

If an EXC_RETURN value is loaded into the PC when in Thread mode, or from the vector table, or by any other instruction, the value is treated as an address, not as a special value. This address range is defined to have XN permissions, and therefore the attempted instruction execution results in a HardFault exception.

Integrity checks on exception returns

Exception return information might be inconsistent with the state of execution held in processor hardware, or inconsistent with other state stored by the exception mechanisms.

ARMv6-M supports only limited integrity checking on exception return, as described in this section.

The effect of using a reserved or inconsistent EXC_RETURN value is UNPREDICTABLE. However, ARM recommends that implementations document any cases that are guaranteed to cause a HardFault or a lockup situation as if those cases are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

In the case of a memory fault when recovering the xPSR, if the EXC_RETURN value indicates that the exception return:

- must use the Main stack, SP_main, a lockup at HardFault priority occurs
- must use the Process stack, SP_process, a Pending HardFault exception is generated.

If the unstacked xPSR is inconsistent with either the EXC_RETURN value used, or with the current set of active exceptions, the result is UNPREDICTABLE. However, if the EXC_RETURN value indicates a return to Thread mode, and CONTROL.nPRIV is set to 1, the exception return must:

- perform all stack accesses as unprivileged accesses
- discard the IPSR value from the stacked xPSR, and set IPSR to 0.

Exception return operation

For global declarations see *Register-related definitions for pseudocode* on page B1-216.
For `ExceptionTaken()` see *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-224.
See *Reset behavior* on page B1-224 for a definition of `ExceptionActive[*]`. `ExceptionActiveBitCount()` is a pseudofunction that returns the number of bits set to '1' in the ExceptionActive[*] array.
For helper functions and procedures see *Miscellaneous helper procedures and functions* on page AppxE-406.

The `ExceptionReturn()` pseudocode function describes the exception return operation:

```
// ExceptionReturn()
// =================

ExceptionReturn(bits(28) EXC_RETURN)
    assert CurrentMode == Mode_Handler;
    if !IsOnes(EXC_RETURN<27:4>) then UNPREDICTABLE;

    integer ReturningExceptionNumber = UInt(IPSR<5:0>);
    integer NestedActivation;           // Used for Handler => Thread check when value == 1

    NestedActivation = ExceptionActiveBitCount(); // Number of active exceptions

    if ExceptionActive[ReturningExceptionNumber] == '0' then
        UNPREDICTABLE;                          // Returning from an inactive handler
    else
        case  EXC_RETURN<3:0> of
            when '0001'                         // Return to Handler
                if NestedActivation == 1 then
                    UNPREDICTABLE;              // Return to Handler exception mismatch
                else
                    frameptr = SP_main;
                    CurrentMode = Mode_Handler;
                    CONTROL.SPSEL = '0';
            when '1001'                         // Return to Thread using Main stack
                if NestedActivation != 1 then
                    UNPREDICTABLE;              // Return to Thread exception mismatch
                else
                    frameptr = SP_main;
                    CurrentMode = Mode_Thread;
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
                CONTROL.SPSEL = '0';
            when '1101'                         // Return to Thread using Process stack
                if NestedActivation != 1 then
                    UNPREDICTABLE;              // Return to Thread exception mismatch
                else
                    frameptr = SP_process;
                    CurrentMode = Mode_Thread;
                    CONTROL.SPSEL = '1';
                    // Assigning CurrentMode to Mode_Thread causes a drop in privilege
                    // if CONTROL.nPRIV is set to 1

            otherwise
                UNPREDICTABLE;                  // Illegal EXC_RETURN

        DeActivate(ReturningExceptionNumber);
        PopStack(frameptr);

        if CurrentMode == Mode_Handler then
            if IPSR<5:0> == '000000' then
                UNPREDICTABLE;                  // Return IPSR not consistent with mode
        else
            if IPSR<5:0> != '000000' then
                UNPREDICTABLE;                  // Return IPSR not consistent with mode

        SetEventRegister()                      // See WFE instruction for more details
        InstructionSynchronizationBarrier();

        if CurrentMode == Mode_Thread && SCR.SLEEPONEXIT == '1' then
            SleepOnExit();                      // IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED
```

For the definition of `ExceptionTaken()` see *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-224. For ARMv6-M `NestedActivation()` is conceptual.

The definitions of the `DeActivate()` and `PopStack()` pseudo-functions are:

```
// DeActivate()
// ============

DeActivate(integer ReturningExceptionNumber)
    ExceptionActive[ReturningExceptionNumber] = '0';
    /* PRIMASK unchanged on exception exit */
    return;

// PopStack()
// ==========

PopStack(bits(32) frameptr)          // only stack locations, not the load order, are architected
    R[0]  = MemA[frameptr,4];        // Stack accesses are performed as Unprivileged accesses if
    R[1]  = MemA[frameptr+0x4,4];    // CONTROL<0>=='1' && EXC_RETURN<3>=='1' Privileged otherwise
    R[2]  = MemA[frameptr+0x8,4];
    R[3]  = MemA[frameptr+0xC,4];
    R[12] = MemA[frameptr+0x10,4];
    LR    = MemA[frameptr+0x14,4];
    PC    = MemA[frameptr+0x18,4];   // UNPREDICTABLE if the new PC not halfword aligned
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
psr   = MemA[frameptr+0x1C,4];
case  EXC_RETURN<3:0> of
    when '0001'                             // Returning to Handler mode
        SP_main = (SP_main + 0x20) OR ZeroExtend(psr<9>:'00',32);
    when '1001'                             // Returning to Thread mode using Main stack
        SP_main = (SP_main + 0x20) OR ZeroExtend(psr<9>:'00',32);
    when '1101'                             // Returning to Thread mode using Process stack
        SP_process = (SP_process + 0x20) OR ZeroExtend(psr<9>:'00',32);
APSR<31:28> = psr<31:28>;                   // Load valid APSR bits from memory
force_thread = (CurrentMode == Mode_Thread && CONTROL.nPRIV == '1');
IPSR<5:0> = if force_thread then '000000' else psr<5:0>;
                                            // Load valid IPSR bits from memory
EPSR<24> = psr<24>;                         // Load valid EPSR bits from memory
return;
```

`SleepOnExit()` behavior is controlled by the SLEEPONEXIT bit in the System Control Register, see *Power management* on page B1-240.

Note

On an exception return to Thread mode, it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED:

- whether the exception return implements any `SleepOnExit()` behavior
- where in the exception return process the implementation performs any supported `SleepOnExit()` behavior.

Compatibility

An operating system might avoid saving and restoring the LR when switching between different processes in Thread mode if it knows that the EXC_RETURN value is the same for the two processes. This provides a small improvement in context switch time, but at the cost of future compatibility. ARM does not guarantee that future revisions of the ARMv6-M architecture will support this software optimization, and recommends for future compatibility that the R14 value is always saved and restored as part of a context switch.

B1.5.9 Exceptions in single-word load operations

To support instruction replay, single-word load instructions must not update the destination register when a fault occurs during execution. For example, this means the following instruction can be replayed:

```
LDR R0, [R2, R0];
```

B1.5.10 Exceptions in Load Multiple and Store Multiple operations

In ARMv6-M, it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether interrupts are taken during the execution of the multi-word instructions `LDM`, `STM`, `PUSH` and `POP`. If an interrupt is taken during a multi-word instruction, the instruction is abandoned, and if the return from the interrupt re-executes the instruction, the multi-word instruction is restarted. In the same way, if a precise HardFault occurs during the execution of a multi-word instruction, the instruction is abandoned, and if the return from the exception re-executes the instruction, the

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

multi-word instruction is restarted. In all cases, instructions that are restarted perform all the memory accesses specified by the instruction, repeating memory accesses performed by the original execution of the instruction before it was abandoned.

To support instruction replay, the `LDM`, `STM`, `PUSH` and `POP` instructions must restore the base register if the instruction is abandoned.

Note

Because interrupts might be taken during the execution of multi-word instructions, these instructions must not be used to access regions of memory if it is unacceptable to repeat a memory access, see *Device memory* on page A3-52 and *Strongly-ordered memory* on page A3-53.

Load multiple and PC in load list

For the ARM architecture in general, the case of `LDM` with PC in the register list is defined as unordered, meaning the registers can be loaded in a different order to that implied by the register list. The usual use is to load the PC first, described as loading the PC early.

For ARMv6-M, if the processor loads the PC early, before taking an exception, it must restore the PC, so that the return address from the exception is to the `LDM` instruction address. The processor then loads the new PC value again when it restarts executing the `LDM` instruction.

B1.5.11 Exceptions on exception entry

During exception entry other exceptions can occur, either because of a fault on an operation involved in exception entry, or because of the arrival of an asynchronous exception, an interrupt, that is of higher priority than the current exception entry sequence.

Late-arriving exceptions

The ARMv6-M architecture does not specify the point during an exception entry at which the processor recognizes the arrival of an asynchronous exception. However, to support very low interrupt latencies, the architecture permits a high priority interrupt that arrives during an exception entry to activate during that exception entry sequence, without causing the entry sequence to repeat.

When the processor takes an asynchronous interrupt during the exception entry sequence, the exception that caused the exception entry sequence is known as the original exception. The exception caused by the interrupt is known as the late-arriving exception.

In this case, the exception entry sequence started by the original exception can be used by the late-arriving exception. The processor takes the original exception after returning from the late-arriving exception. This is referred to as late-arrival preemption.

For a late arrival preemption, the processor enters the handler for the late-arriving exception, which becomes active. The original exception remains in the pending state.

A late-arriving exception can be an interrupt, a fault, or a supervisor call.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED what conditions, if any, cause late arrival preemption. Late arrival preemption occurs only when the late-arriving exception is of higher priority than the original exception. If an implementation supports late arriving exceptions, the `LateArrival()` pseudocode amends the `ExceptionType` argument used in `ExceptionTaken()`, as follows:

```
// LateArrival()
// =============

LateArrival()

    // xEpriority: the lower the value, the higher the priority

    integer OEpriority;  // original exception group priority
    integer LAEpriority; // late-arriving exception group priority
    integer OEnumber;    // ExceptionNumber for OE
    integer LAEnumber;   // ExceptionNumber for LAE

    if (LAEpriority < OEpriority) then
        ExceptionTaken(LAEnumber);       // late-arriving exception taken
    else
        ExceptionTaken(OEnumber);        // original exception taken
```

Derived exceptions on exception entry

Where an exception entry sequence itself causes a fault, the exception that caused the exception entry sequence is known as the original exception. The fault that is caused by the exception entry sequence is known as the derived exception. The code stream that was running at the time of the original exception is known as the preempted code, and the execution priority of that code is the preempted priority.

The following HardFault faults can occur as derived exceptions during exception entry:

- a memory fault on the writes to the stack memory as part of the exception entry
- a memory fault on reading the vector for exception entry.

If the preempted group priority is lower than HardFault, the HardFault exception is set to Pending and the exception taken in accordance with the prioritization rules for pending exceptions. In this case, it is permissible for the HardFault exception to be treated as a late-arrival exception. If the preempted group priority is a HardFault, that is, it has a priority value of -1, a lockup occurs. See *Unrecoverable exception cases* on page B1-238.

Derived exceptions that occur during an NMI entry sequence, that is, having a group priority value of -2, cannot cause preemption.

B1.5.12 Exceptions on exception return, and tail-chaining exceptions

During exception return, other exceptions can affect behavior, either because of a fault on the operations performed during exception return, or because of an asynchronous exception that is of higher priority than the priority level that the exception return is returning to. The asynchronous exception might be already pending or might arrive during the exception return.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

The Exception Return Link describes the target of the exception return. The target priority is the higher of:

- the priority of the highest priority active exception, excluding the exception being returned from
- the boosted priority set by the PRIMASK register.

Where the recognition of interrupts during an exception return is not supported, a HardFault caused by the exception return is the only exception that can occur at this time.

Derived exceptions on exception return

Where an exception return sequence causes a fault exception, the exception caused by the exception return sequence is known as the derived exception.

During an exception return, a memory fault on the reads from the stack memory cause a HardFault derived exception. The restored state including the target priority can not be guaranteed, meaning that either a HardFault exception is taken or Lockup occurs, see *Unrecoverable exception cases* on page B1-238.

Tail-chaining

Tail-chaining is the optimization of an exception return and an exception entry sequence by removing the load and store of the key context state.

An implementation can use tail-chaining in the following cases:

- To handle a derived exception.
- As an optimization to improve interrupt response when there is a pending exception with a higher priority than the target priority. In this case, the processor takes the Pending exception immediately on exception return, and tail-chaining optimizes the exception return and entry sequence.

In the tail-chaining optimization, the processor combines the exception return and exception entry sequences to form the sequence described by the `TailChain()` pseudocode function, in which `ReturningExceptionNumber` is the number of the exception being returned from, and `ExceptionNumber` is the number of the exception being entered by tail-chaining. `EXC_RETURN` is the EXC_RETURN value that started the original exception return.

For a definition of `ExceptionTaken()` see *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-224.
For a definition of `DeActivate()` see *Exception return behavior* on page B1-227.

```
// TailChain()
// ===========

TailChain(bits(28) EXC_RETURN)
    assert CurrentMode == Mode_Handler;
    if !IsOnes(EXC_RETURN<27:4>) then UNPREDICTABLE;

    integer ReturningExceptionNumber = UInt(IPSR<5:0>);
    LR = 0xF0000000 + EXC_RETURN;
    DeActivate(ReturningExceptionNumber);
    ExceptionTaken(ExceptionNumber);
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Note

- The `TailChain()` pseudocode defines the minimum required behavior on tail-chaining an exception.
- It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED how far into an exception return sequence tail-chaining can be performed. For example, an implementation might permit tail-chaining after some loads from a `PopStack()` operation have been performed, but is not required to do so.

Use of tail-chaining as an optimization for pending exceptions

If there are pending exceptions with sufficient priority to be taken immediately after an exception, using tail-chaining to optimize the exception return can prevent many derived exceptions from occurring. If tail-chaining is not used, the processor takes any derived exception when it returns from the pending exception.

Late arrival preemption and tail-chaining during exception returns

The ARMv6-M architecture does not specify the point at which the processor recognizes any asynchronous exception that arrives during an exception. If the processor recognizes a new exception while it is tail-chaining another exception, and the new exception has higher priority than the exception being tail-chained, then the processor can, instead, take the new exception, using late-arrival preemption. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED what conditions, if any, lead to late arrival preemption.

Late-arrival preemption can occur during a tail-chaining optimization of a derived exception on an exception return. The processor marks the derived exception as pending when it takes a new exception because of late-arrival preemption of the derived exception by the new exception.

B1.5.13 Exception status and control

The System Control Block is in the SCS, see *Interrupt Control State Register, ICSR* on page B3-265, and provides the register support required to manage the exception model. These registers are grouped as follows:

- general system configuration, status and control, using the following registers:
  - ICSR, see *Interrupt Control State Register, ICSR* on page B3-265
  - AIRCR, see *Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR* on page B3-268
  - SHPRs, see *System Handler Priority Register 2, SHPR2* on page B3-272, and *System Handler Priority Register 3, SHPR3* on page B3-273
- SysTick support, if implemented, see *The system timer, SysTick* on page B3-275
- NVIC support, see *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller, NVIC* on page B3-281

For ARMv6-M, support of the following is fixed in hardware with no programming interface:

- stack alignment, see *Stack alignment on exception entry* on page B1-227
- unaligned access trapping, see *Alignment support* on page A3-43

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

- priority grouping, see *Priority grouping* on page B1-222.

Using the ICSR, see *Interrupt Control State Register, ICSR* on page B3-265, software can:

- set the NMI, SysTick and PendSV exceptions to the pending state
- clear the pending state of the SysTick and PendSV exceptions
- find status information for any pending or active exceptions.

Using the AIRCR, see *Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR* on page B3-268, software can:

- read the endianness used for data accesses, see *Controlling endianness in ARMv6-M* on page A3-45
- initiate a reset, see *Reset management* on page B1-240.

Using the SHPRs, see *System Handler Priority Register 2, SHPR2* on page B3-272 and *System Handler Priority Register 3, SHPR3* on page B3-273, software can provide the ability to program the priority of SVCall, SysTick, and PendSV exceptions.

Using the NVIC registers, see *NVIC register support in the SCS* on page B3-283, software can perform the following functions for external interrupts:

- enable or disable
- set or clear the pending state
- program the priority.

Note

An interrupt can become pending when it is disabled. Enabling an interrupt means a pending interrupt can activate.

B1.5.14 Fault behavior

Under the ARMv6-M exception priority scheme, a processor handles a precise fault in one of the following ways:

- by taking a HardFault exception
- by using the Lockup mechanism in the case of a fault arising while executing a HardFault or NMI, see *Unrecoverable exception cases* on page B1-238.

In ARMv6-M, faults are considered fatal. The only fault status information provided on entry to the HardFault handler is the EXC_RETURN value, that indicates whether the fault originated from Thread or Handler mode. The fault handler returns according to the rules defined in `ReturnAddress()`, see *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-224 for details.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B1-6 lists all faults. The information provided includes the cause and exception taken.

Table B1-6 List of supported faults

Fault Cause	Fault exception	Notes
Vector Read error	HardFault	Bus error returned when reading the vector table entry.
Fault escalation, see *Priority escalation* on page B1-223 for more information.	HardFault	An SVCall occurred, and the handler group priority is lower or equal to the execution group priority.
Memory fault on exception entry stack memory operations	HardFault	Bus error resulting from failure when saving context through hardware.
Memory fault on exception return stack memory operations	HardFault	Bus error resulting from failure when restoring context through hardware.
Memory fault on instruction access, precise	HardFault	Bus error on an instruction fetch or attempt to execute from memory marked as XN.
Precise error on data access	HardFault	Precise bus error because of an explicit memory access.
Imprecise error on data access	HardFault	Imprecise bus error because of an explicit memory access.
Undefined Instruction	HardFault	Unknown instruction.
Attempt to execute an instruction when EPSR.T==0	HardFault	Attempt to execute in an invalid EPSR state, for example after a BX type instruction has changed state. This includes state change after entry to or return from exception, or return from inter-working instructions.
Unaligned load or store	HardFault	This occurs when any load-store instruction attempts to access a non-aligned location.
MPU illegal memory access	HardFault	Permission fault resulting from memory access not matching all access conditions of a region address match.
MPU illegal instruction execution	HardFault	Attempt to execute illegal instruction from memory marked as XN.
PPB unprivileged access	HardFault	Unprivileged accesses to the PPB generate a HardFault error, and PPB access is not permitted.
See Chapter C1 *ARMv6-M Debug* for information about debug related faults.		

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Fault status and address information

The ARMv6-M SCS includes fault status associated with debug only, in the DFSR. See *Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-330 for more information.

B1.5.15 Unrecoverable exception cases

The ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M architecture generally assumes that when the processor is running at priority -1 or higher, any fault or supervisor call that occurs is entirely unexpected and fatal. While ARMv6-M does not provide fault status information to the HardFault handler, it does permit the handler to perform an exception return and continue execution, in cases where software has the ability to recover from the fault situation.

The standard exception entry mechanism does not apply where a fault or supervisor call occurs at a priority of -1 or higher. ARMv7-M requires the processor to handle most of these cases using a *Lockup* mechanism, otherwise the condition becomes pending or is ignored. ARMv6-M uses Lockup in all its supported cases. Lockup means the processor suspends normal instruction execution and enters Lockup state. When in Lockup state:

- the processor appears to repeatedly attempt executing instructions from the fixed address `0xFFFFFFFE`
- the address `0xFFFFFFFE` is marked as XN, resulting in a further Lockup instruction that keeps the processor in Lockup state.

Note

Lockup addresses shown as `0xFFFFFFFE` are sometimes described as lockups at address `0xFFFFFFFF`. This is because any instruction fetch is halfword aligned. and therefore addresses `0xFFFFFFFE` and `0xFFFFFFFF` are equivalent.

ARM strongly recommends that implementations provide an external signal that indicates that the processor is in Lockup state, so that an external mechanism can react.

A processor can exit Lockup state in the following ways:

- If locked up at priority -1 and an NMI exception occurs, the NMI is activated as normal. The NMI return link is the address used for the Lockup state.
- A System reset occurs. This exits Lockup state and resets the system as normal.
- A halt command from a halt mode debug agent is issued. The processor enters Debug state with the PC set to the same value that is used for the Lockup state. See Table B1-7 on page B1-239 for more information.

Table B1-7 on page B1-239 outlines the behavior of all Lockup conditions.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B1-7 Lockup conditions

Fault cause	Occurrence	Behavior
VECTABLE read error at reset	Cannot read vector table for SP or PC at reset	Lockup at priority -1
VECTABLE read error on NMI entry	Cannot read NMI vector	Lockup at priority -2
VECTABLE read error on HardFault entry	Cannot read HardFault vector	Lockup at priority -1
Memory Fault, Instruction	Priority -1 or -2	Lockup at priority of occurrence
Memory Fault, Imprecise Data	Priority -1 or -2	Lockup at priority of occurrence
Memory Fault, Precise Data	Priority -1 or -2	Lockup at priority of occurrence
Memory Fault, STKERR on NMI entry	Priority before NMI was -1, HardFault.	Lockup at priority -1 or -2 IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED
Memory Fault, UNSTKERR	Unstacking fault	Lockup at priority -1 or -2 or HardFault exception[a]
SVC[b]	Priority -1 or -2	Lockup at priority of occurrence
Usage Fault	Priority -1 or -2	Lockup at priority of occurrence
Undefined instruction	Priority -1 or -2	Lockup at priority of occurrence
Breakpoint[c]	Priority -1 or -2	Lockup at priority of occurrence

a. The behavior depends on the restored state. See *Integrity checks on exception returns* on page B1-228 for more information.
b. At priority -1 or -2, SVC is treated as an UNDEFINED instruction.
c. BKPT instruction when DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B1.5.16 Reset management

In ARMv6-M, the AIRCR provides a mechanism for a system reset, see *Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR* on page B3-268. Setting the AIRCR.SYSRESETREQ control bit to 1 requests a reset by an external system resource. The system components that are reset by this request are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. A Local reset is required as part of a system reset request.

Setting the SYSRESETREQ bit to 1 does not guarantee that the reset takes place immediately. A typical code sequence to synchronize reset following a write to the relevant control bit is:

```
      DSB;
Loop  B    Loop;
```

Reset and debug

Debug logic in ARMv6-M is only present when the Debug Extension is implemented and its reset policy is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, as described in *Debug and reset* on page C1-323.

B1.5.17 Power management

ARMv6-M supports the use of *Wait for Interrupt* (`WFI`) and *Wait for Event* (`WFE`) instructions as part of system power management:

Wait for Interrupt provides a mechanism for hardware support of entry to one or more sleep states. Hardware can suspend execution until a wakeup event occurs. The levels of power saving and associated wakeup latency when execution is suspended, are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED

Wait for Event provides a mechanism for software to suspend program execution until a wakeup condition occurs with minimal or no impact on wakeup latency. Wait for Event provides some freedom for hardware to instigate power saving measures. Both `WFI` and `WFE` are hint instructions that might have no effect on program execution. Normally, they are used in software idle loops that resume program execution only after an interrupt or event of interest occurs.

Note

Code using `WFE` and `WFI` must handle any spurious wakeup events caused by a debug halt or other IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED reasons. ARMv6-M permits both `WFI` and `WFE` to be implemented as NOP.

For more information, see:

- *Wait For Event and Send Event* on page B1-241
- *Wait For Interrupt* on page B1-243.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Where a processor implements power management, the System Control Register provides control and configuration of those features, see *System Control Register, SCR* on page B3-269. The following SCR bits control power-management functions:

SEVONPEND

Configures interrupt transitions from inactive to pending state as wakeup events. This configuration means the system can use a masked interrupt as the wakeup event from WFE power-saving.

SLEEPONEXIT

Enables sleep-on-exit operation, if implemented. This configuration means that, on an exception return, if no exception other than the returning exception is active, the processor suspends execution without returning from the exception. Subsequently, when another exception becomes active, the processor can tail-chain that exception, see *Tail-chaining* on page B1-234.

Whether a processor supports sleep-on-exit functionality, and all aspects of sleep-on-exit behavior specified in this manual, is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

When a processor enters sleep mode because of the sleep-on-exit functionality, the wakeup events are identical to those for WFI.

A processor can exit the suspended state spuriously. ARM recommends that any software that uses the sleep-on-exit feature is written to handle spurious wakeup events and the exception return to Thread mode that these spurious events cause.

SLEEPDEEP

Selects between different levels of sleep. When this bit is set to 1, it indicates that the wakeup time from sleep state might be longer than it is when the bit set to 0. Typically, the system can use this value to determine whether it can suspend a PLL or other clock generator. The exact behavior is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

B1.5.18 Wait For Event and Send Event

ARMv6-M can support software-based synchronization to system events using the `SEV` and `WFE` hint instructions. Software can:

- use the `WFE` instruction to indicate that it is able to suspend execution of a process or thread until an event occurs, permitting hardware to enter a low power state.
- rely on a mechanism that is transparent to software and provides low latency wakeup.

The Wait For Event mechanism relies on hardware and software working together to achieve energy saving. For example, stalling execution of a processor until a device or another processor has set a flag:

- the hardware provides the mechanism to enter the Wait For Event low-power state
- software enters a polling loop to determine when the flag is set:
  - the polling processor issues a Wait For Event instruction as part of a polling loop if the flag is clear

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

— an event is generated (hardware interrupt or Send Event instruction from another processor) when the flag is set.

The mechanism depends on the interaction of:

- WFE wake-up events, see *WFE wake-up events*
- the Event Register, see *The Event Register*
- the Send Event instruction, see *The Send Event instruction*
- the Wait For Event instruction, see *The Wait For Event instruction*.

WFE wake-up events

The following events are *WFE wake-up events*:

- the execution of an `SEV` instruction on any other processor in a multiprocessor system
- any exception entering the pending state if SEVONPEND in the System Control Register is set to 1
- an asynchronous exception at a priority that preempts any currently active exceptions
- a debug event with debug enabled.

The Event Register

The Event Register is a single bit register for each processor in a multiprocessor system. When set, an Event Register indicates that an event has occurred, since the register was last cleared, that might prevent the processor having to suspend operation on issuing a `WFE` instruction. The following conditions apply to the Event Register:

- A reset clears the Event Register.
- Any `WFE` wakeup event, or the execution of an exception return instruction, sets the Event Register. For the definition of exception return instructions see *Exception return behavior* on page B1-227.
- A `WFE` instruction clears the Event Register.
- Software cannot read or write the value of the Event Register directly.

The Send Event instruction

The Send Event instruction, see *SEV* on page A6-174, causes an event to be signaled to all processors in a multiprocessor system. The mechanism used to signal the event to the processors is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. The Send Event instruction generates a wakeup event.

The Send Event instruction is available to both unprivileged and privileged code.

The Wait For Event instruction

The action of the Wait For Event instruction, see *WFE* on page A6-197, depends on the state of the Event Register:

- If the Event Register is set, the instruction clears the register and returns immediately.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

- If the Event Register is clear the processor can suspend execution and enter a low-power state. It can remain in that state until the processor detects a WFE wakeup event or a reset. When the processor detects a WFE wakeup event, or earlier if the implementation chooses, the WFE instruction completes.

The Wait For Event instruction, WFE, is available to both unprivileged and privileged code.

WFE wakeup events can occur before a WFE instruction is issued. Software using the Wait For Event mechanism must tolerate spurious wake-up events, including multiple wakeups.

Pseudocode details of the Wait For Event lock mechanism

The SetEventRegister() pseudocode procedure sets the processor Event Register.

The ClearEventRegister() pseudocode procedure clears the processor Event Register.

The EventRegistered() pseudocode function returns TRUE if the processor Event Register is set and FALSE if it is clear:

```
boolean EventRegistered()
```

The WaitForEvent() pseudocode procedure optionally suspends execution until a WFE wake-up event or reset occurs, or until some earlier time if the implementation chooses. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether restarting execution after the period of suspension causes a ClearEventRegister() to occur.

The SendEvent() pseudocode procedure sets the Event Register of every processor in a multiprocessor system.

B1.5.19 Wait For Interrupt

The ARMv6-M architecture supports Wait For Interrupt through the hint instruction, WFI. For more information, see *WFI* on page A6-198.

When a processor issues a WFI instruction it can suspend execution and enter a low-power state. It can remain in that state until the processor detects one of the following *WFI wake-up events*:

- A reset.
- An asynchronous exception at a priority that, if PRIMASK.PM was set to 0, would preempt any currently active exceptions.

  Note

  If PRIMASK.PM is set to 1, an asynchronous exception that has a higher group priority than any active exception results in a WFI instruction exit. If the group priority of the exception is less than or equal to the execution group priority, the exception is ignored.

- If debug is enabled, a debug event.
- An IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED WFI wakeup event.

The WFI instruction completes when the hardware detects a WFI wake-up event, or earlier if the implementation chooses.

The processor recognizes WFI wake-up events only after issuing the WFI instruction.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Note

Because debug entry is one of the WFI wake-up events, ARM recommends that software uses Wait For Interrupt as part of an idle loop rather than waiting for a single specific interrupt event to occur and then moving forward. This ensures the intervention of debug while waiting does not significantly change the operation of the program being debugged.

Using WFI to indicate an idle state on bus interfaces

A common implementation practice is to complete any entry into power-down routines with a `WFI` instruction. Typically, the `WFI` instruction:

1. Forces the suspension of execution, and of all associated bus activity
2. Ceases to execute instructions from the processor.

The control logic required to do this typically tracks the activity of the bus interfaces of the processor. This means it can signal to an external power controller that there is no ongoing bus activity.

The exact nature of this interface is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED, but the use of Wait For Interrupt as the only architecturally-defined mechanism that completely suspends execution makes it very suitable as the preferred power-down entry mechanism.

Pseudocode details of Wait For Interrupt

The `WaitForInterrupt()` pseudocode procedure optionally suspends execution until a WFI wake-up event or reset occurs, or until some earlier time if the implementation chooses.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Chapter B2
System Memory Model

This chapter provides pseudocode that describes the ARMv6-M memory model. It contains the following sections:

- *About the system memory model* on page B2-246
- *Declarations and support functions* on page B2-247
- *Memory accesses* on page B2-251
- *Control of the endianness model in ARMv6-M* on page B2-254
- *Barrier support for system correctness* on page B2-255.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B2.1 About the system memory model

The pseudocode described in this chapter is associated with explicit memory accesses. Implicit accesses can occur because of instruction prefetching in hardware or on exception entry and return.

The pseudocode usage hierarchy is as follows:

- instructions that require a memory access use the helper functions `MemA[]` or `MemU[]`
- the access is governed by whether the access is a read or write, its address alignment, data endianness and memory attributes
- memory attributes are determined from the default system address map as defined in *The system address map* on page B3-258.

The pseudocode is broken down into the following subsections:

- declarations and general supporting functions
- memory access support.

The ARMv6-M memory model is compatible with other ARMv6 and ARMv7 architecture variants. Endian configuration and support is described in *Control of the endianness model in ARMv6-M* on page B2-254. To ensure system correctness, barrier instructions are required to provide certain guarantees around accesses to key resources in the SCS as described in *Barrier support for system correctness* on page B2-255.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B2.2 Declarations and support functions

For global declarations see *Register-related definitions for pseudocode* on page B1-216.
For a list of helper functions and procedures see *Miscellaneous helper procedures and functions* on page AppxE-406.

Declarations are as follows:

```
// The following are global declarations for memory access attributes:

boolean iswrite;       // TRUE for memory stores, FALSE for load accesses
boolean ispriv;        // TRUE if the access is privileged, FALSE if unprivileged
boolean isinstrfetch;  // TRUE if the memory access is associated with an instruction fetch
```

General support functions are as follows:

```
// FindPriv()
// ==========

boolean FindPriv()
    return CurrentModeIsPrivileged();

// IsAligned()
// ===========

boolean IsAligned(bits(32) address, integer size)
    assert size IN {1,2,4};                 // for ARMv6-M size must be one of 1,2,4
    mask = (size-1)<31:0>;                  // integer to bit string conversion
    return IsZero(address AND mask);

// BigEndianReverse()
// ==================

bits(8*N) BigEndianReverse (bits(8*N) value, integer N)
    assert N == 1 || N == 2 || N == 4;
    bits(8*N) result;
    case N of
        when 1
            result<7:0> = value<7:0>;
        when 2
            result<15:8> = value<7:0>;
            result<7:0> =  value<15:8>;
        when 4
            result<31:24> = value<7:0>;
            result<23:16> = value<15:8>;
            result<15:8> = value<23:16>;
            result<7:0> =  value<31:24>;
    return result;
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B2.2.1 Definition and mapping of memory attributes and permissions

The following pseudocode defines the selection of memory attributes and permissions for the ARMv6-M address map.

```
// Types of memory

enumeration MemType {MemType_Normal, MemType_Device, MemType_StronglyOrdered};

// Memory attributes descriptor

type MemoryAttributes is (
    MemType type,
    bits(2) innerattrs,  // '00' = Non-cacheable; '01' = WBWA; '10' = WT; '11' = WBnWA
    bits(2) outerattrs,  // '00' = Non-cacheable; '01' = WBWA; '10' = WT; '11' = WBnWA
    boolean shareable
)

// Descriptor used to access the underlying memory array

type AddressDescriptor is (
    MemoryAttributes memattrs,
    bits(32)         physicaladdress
)

// Access permissions descriptor

type Permissions is (
    bits(3) ap,   // Access Permission bits
    bit     xn    // Execute Never bit
)

// DefaultMemoryAttributes()
// =========================

MemoryAttributes DefaultMemoryAttributes(bits(32) address)

    MemoryAttributes memattrs;

    case address<31:29> of
        when '000'
            memattrs.type = MemType_Normal;
            memattrs.innerattrs = '10';
            memattrs.shareable = FALSE;
        when '001'
            memattrs.type = MemType_Normal;
            memattrs.innerattrs = '01';
            memattrs.shareable = FALSE;
        when '010'
            memattrs.type = MemType_Device;
            memattrs.innerattrs = '00';
            memattrs.shareable = FALSE;
        when '011'
            memattrs.type = MemType_Normal;
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
            mematTrs.innerattrs = '01';
            mematTrs.shareable = FALSE;
        when '100'
            mematTrs.type = MemType_Normal;
            mematTrs.innerattrs = '10';
            mematTrs.shareable = FALSE;
        when '101'
            mematTrs.type = MemType_Device;
            mematTrs.innerattrs = '00';
            mematTrs.shareable = TRUE;
        when '110'
            mematTrs.type = MemType_Device;
            mematTrs.innerattrs = '00';
            mematTrs.shareable = FALSE;
        when '111'
            if address<28:20> == '00000000' then
                mematTrs.type = MemType_StronglyOrdered;
                mematTrs.innerattrs = '00';
                mematTrs.shareable = TRUE;
            else
                mematTrs.type = MemType_Device;
                mematTrs.innerattrs = '00';
                mematTrs.shareable = FALSE;

    // Outer attributes are the same as the inner attributes in all cases.
    mematTrs.outerattrs = mematTrs.innerattrs;

    return mematTrs;

// DefaultPermissions
// ==================

Permissions DefaultPermissions(bits(32) address)

    Permissions perms;

    perms.ap = '011';

    case address<31:29> of
        when '000'
            perms.xn = FALSE;
        when '001'
            perms.xn = FALSE;
        when '010'
            perms.xn = TRUE;
        when '011'
            perms.xn = FALSE;
        when '100'
            perms.xn = TRUE;
        when '101'
            perms.xn = TRUE;
        when '110'
            perms.xn = TRUE;
        when '111'
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
                perms.xn = TRUE;

        return perms;
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B2.3 Memory accesses

The pseudocode used to describe the operation of load and store instructions is defined in terms of unaligned accesses. The underlying structure determines the alignment behavior for cases where an aligned address must be used. ARMv6-M only supports aligned memory accesses that comply to the `MemA[]` pseudocode function. This is equivalent to supporting aligned accesses only in other architecture variants, for example by:

- setting the CCR.UNALIGN_TRP bit in an ARMv7-M implementation
- setting the SCTLR.A bit in an ARMv7-A or ARMv7-R implementation.

The `MemU[]` pseudocode function for unaligned memory accesses is defined as equivalent to the `MemA[]` function.

B2.3.1 The _Mem[] function

The _Mem[] function performs single-copy atomic, aligned, little-endian memory accesses to the underlying physical memory array of bytes:

```
bits(8*size) _Mem[AddressDescriptor memaddrdesc, integer size]          // non-assignment form
    assert size == 1 || size == 2 || size == 4;

_Mem[AddressDescriptor memaddrdesc, integer size] = bits(8*size) value   // assignment form
    assert size == 1 || size == 2 || size == 4;
```

The function addresses the array using a 32-bit physical address supplied in memaddrdesc.physicaladdress.

For ARMv6-M, the 2^{32} byte address space complies with the system address map restrictions, as defined in *The system address map* on page B3-258.

The attributes within memaddrdesc.memattrs are used by the memory system to determine caching and ordering behaviors as described in *Memory types and attributes and the memory order model* on page A3-48 and *Access rights* on page A3-56.

B2.3.2 The MemA[] and MemU[] functions

For definitions of pseudocode functions used in the `MemA[]` and `MemU[]` function definitions, see:

- *Miscellaneous helper procedures and functions* on page AppxE-406 for `BigEndianReverse()` and `IsAligned()`
- *Exception entry behavior* on page B1-224 for `ExceptionTaken()`
- *MPU pseudocode* on page B3-290 for `ValidateAddress()`
- *The _Mem[] function* for `Mem[]`.

```
// MemA[] non-assignment form used for memory reads
// ================================================

bits(8*size) MemA[bits(32) address, integer size]
    bits(8*size) value;

    // check alignment
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
    if !IsAligned(address, size) then
        ExceptionTaken(HardFault);
    memaddrdesc = ValidateAddress(address, FindPriv(), FALSE, FALSE);
    value = _Mem[memaddrdesc, size];
    if AIRCR.ENDIANESS == '1' then
        value = BigEndianReverse(value, size);
    return value;

// MemA[] assignment form used for memory writes
// =============================================

MemA[bits(32) address, integer size] = bits(8*size) value

    // check alignment

    if !IsAligned(address, size) then
        ExceptionTaken(HardFault);
    memaddrdesc = ValidateAddress(address, FindPriv(), TRUE, FALSE);
    if (memaddrdesc.memattrs.shareable == '1') then
        ClearExclusiveByAddress(memaddrdesc.physicaladdress, ProcessorID(), size);    // see Note
    if AIRCR.ENDIANESS == '1' then
        value = BigEndianReverse(value, size);
    _Mem[memaddrdesc,size] = value;

// Note: ARMv6-M does not support exclusive access. This function activates to clear a global
//       monitor where the fabric and other agents support exclusive accesses, otherwise it is a
//       null function.

// MemU[] non-assignment form, used for memory reads
// =================================================

bits(8*size) MemU[bits(32) address, integer size]
    return MemA[address, size];

// MemU[] assignment form, used for memory writes
// ==============================================

MemU[bits(32) address, integer size] = bits(8*size) value
    MemA[address, size] = value;
```

B2.3.3 Access permission checking

The `CheckPermission()` pseudocode function describes checking the access permission. Permissions are checked against access control information associated with a region when memory protection is supported and enabled, or against access control attributes associated with the default memory map.

```
// CheckPermission()
// =================

CheckPermission(Permissions perms, bits(32) address, boolean iswrite, boolean ispriv,
                boolean isinstrfetch)
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
case perms.ap of
    when '000'  fault = TRUE;
    when '001'  fault = !ispriv;
    when '010'  fault = !ispriv && iswrite;
    when '011'  fault = FALSE;
    when '100'  UNPREDICTABLE;
    when '101'  fault = !ispriv || iswrite;
    when '110'  fault = iswrite;
    when '111'  fault = iswrite;

if isinstrfetch then
    if fault || (perms.xn == '1') then
        ExceptionTaken(HardFault);
elsif fault then
    ExceptionTaken(HardFault);
return;
```

B2.3.4 MPU access control decode

See *PMSAv6 MPU operation* on page B3-290 for information about the memory attribute decode that is used when memory protection is enabled.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B2.4 Control of the endianness model in ARMv6-M

ARMv6-M supports a selectable endianness model, that is configured to be big endian or little endian. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the selection is a build time option or determined from a control input on system reset. The endian mapping has the following restrictions:

- The endian setting only applies to data accesses, instruction fetches are always little endian
- Loads and stores to the PPB are always little endian, see *General rules for PPB register accesses* on page B3-260.

The endian configuration can be determined by reading a system control register, see *Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR* on page B3-268.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B2.5 Barrier support for system correctness

ARMv6-M has limited support for ensuring that system configuration events have completed as part of system correctness. For special-purpose register support, see *The special-purpose CONTROL register* on page B1-215 and *Special-purpose register updates and the memory order model* on page B1-215.

All other resources are memory mapped and for system correctness it is important that exception management software can ensure:

- SVCall and PendSV exception priorities can be changed while they are not in the active state.
- SysTick and NVIC generated interrupts can be disabled and it is deterministic when the associated exception does not enter the active state.

To meet the condition for SVCall or PendSV, priority management must occur in Thread mode, otherwise software is required to ensure neither exception can transition to the active state while SHPR3 is updated, see *System Handler Priority Register 3, SHPR3* on page B3-273.

For ARMv6-M, the following context guarantees are required between memory-mapped registers and barrier instructions:

- a `DSB` instruction must ensure that a read or write to the SCS register has completed before the next instruction executes
- An `ISB` instruction must ensure that the side-effects of any completed reads or writes are visible after the `ISB` instruction has completed.

The following sequence is required to ensure registers in the SCS are updated:

```
SCS_RegisterWrite();    // write access to the System Control Space register
DSB;                    // ensure the write occurs to the register
ISB;                    // ensure any context guarantees have completed
```

Table B3-3 on page B3-262 lists the registers in the SCS.

The following are examples of where the barrier support provides the required correctness:

- For SysTick support, a write to clear the STCSR.ENABLE bit including the barrier instruction sequence ensures that the ICSR.PENDSTSET bit does not change from the Inactive to Pending state. A subsequent write to set ICSR.PENDSTCLR including the barrier instruction sequence ensures that activation of the SysTick exception is prevented beyond this point.
- A write of an ICER.CLRENA bit to disable an external interrupt source including the barrier instruction sequence ensures that the associated ISPR.SETPEND bit does not become active beyond this point.
- ICSR.VECTPENDING does not change state because of a SysTick or NVIC interrupt after the associated exception disable sequences described here are executed.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Chapter B3
System Address Map

This chapter describes the ARMv6-M system address map, including the memory-mapped registers. It contains the following sections:

- *The system address map* on page B3-258
- *System Control Space (SCS)* on page B3-262
- *The system timer, SysTick* on page B3-275
- *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller, NVIC* on page B3-281
- *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv6* on page B3-289.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.1 The system address map

ARMv6-M supports a predefined 32-bit address space, with subdivision for code, data, and peripherals, and regions for on-chip and off-chip resources, where on-chip refers to resources that are tightly coupled to the processor. The address space supports eight primary partitions, of 0.5GB each:

- Code
- SRAM
- Peripheral
- two RAM regions
- two Device regions
- System.

The architecture assigns physical addresses that are used for system control, configuration, and as event entry points or *vectors*. The architecture defines the vectors relative to a table base address, that is fixed at address `0x00000000` in ARMv6-M.

The address space `0xE0000000` to `0xFFFFFFFF` is reserved for system level use.

Table B3-1 on page B3-259 shows the ARMv6-M default address map, and the attributes of the memory regions in that map. In this table:

- XN indicates an eXecute Never region. Any attempt to execute code from an XN region faults, generating a HardFault exception.
- The Cache column indicates the cache policy for Normal memory regions, for inner and outer caches, to support system caches. A declared cache type can be demoted but not promoted, as follows:

  WT Write-through. Can be treated as non-cached.

  WBWA Write-back, write allocate, can be treated as write-through or non-cached.
- In the Device column:
  - Shareable indicates that the region supports shared use by multiple agents in a coherent memory domain. These agents can be any mix of processors and DMA agents.
  - SO indicates Strongly-ordered memory. Strongly-ordered memory is always shareable.

  Note

  ARMv6-M does not support exclusive access instructions such as `LDREX` or `STREX`, or any form of atomic swap instruction. Software must take account of this in multiprocessing environments that use shared memory.
- It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED which portions of the overall address space are designated:
  - read-write
  - read-only, for example Flash memory
  - no-access, typically unpopulated parts of the address map.
- A multi-word access that crosses a 0.5GB address boundary is UNPREDICTABLE.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

See Chapter A2 *Application Level Programmers' Model* for more information about memory attributes and the memory model.

Table B3-1 ARMv6-M address map

Address	Name	Device type	XN?	Cache	Description
0x00000000-0x1FFFFFFF	Code	Normal	-	WT	Typically ROM or flash memory. Memory required from address 0x0 to support the vector table for system boot code on reset.
0x20000000-0x3FFFFFFF	SRAM	Normal	-	WBWA	SRAM region typically used for on-chip RAM.
0x40000000-0x5FFFFFFF	Peripheral	Device	XN	-	On-chip peripheral address space.
0x60000000-0x7FFFFFFF	RAM	Normal	-	WBWA	Memory with write-back, write allocate cache attribute for L2/L3 cache support.
0x80000000-0x9FFFFFFF	RAM	Normal	-	WT	Memory with write-through cache attribute.
0xA0000000-0xBFFFFFFF	Device	Device, shareable	XN	-	Shared device space.
0xC0000000-0xDFFFFFFF	Device	Device, non-shareable	XN	-	Non-shared device space.
0xE0000000-0xFFFFFFFF	System	See *Description*	XN	-	System segment for the PPB and vendor system peripherals, see Table B3-2 on page B3-260.

The System region of the memory map, starting at 0xE0000000, subdivides as follows:

- the 1MB region at offset +0x00000000 is reserved as a *Private Peripheral Bus* (PPB)
- the region from offset +0x00100000 is the Vendor system region, Vendor_SYS.

Table B3-2 on page B3-260 shows the subdivision of this region.

In the Vendor_SYS region, ARM recommends that:

- vendor resources start at 0xF0000000
- the region 0xE0100000-0xEFFFFFFF is reserved.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-2 Subdivision of the System region of the ARMv6-M address map

Address	Name	Memory type	XN?	Description
System memory region, 0xE0000000-0xFFFFFFFF				
0xE0000000-0xE00FFFFF	PPB[a]	Strongly-ordered	XN	1MB region reserved as a PPB. This supports key resources, including the System Control Space, and debug features.
0xE0100000-0xFFFFFFFF	Vendor_SYS	Device	XN	Vendor system region, see the ARM recommendations in this section.

a. Accessible by privileged access only, in all implementations.

Supporting a software model that recognizes unprivileged and privileged accesses requires a memory protection scheme to control the access rights. The *ARMv6-M Protected Memory System Architecture* (PMSAv6) is an optional extension to the ARMv6-M architecture that provides such a scheme. An implementation of PMSAv6 provides a *Memory Protection Unit* (MPU).

If the implementation does not use the ARMv6-M PMSA Extension, the address map in Table B3-1 on page B3-259 is the only one supported.

If the processor implements the PMSA Extension, the ARMv6-M address map is configurable as follows:

- when the MPU is disabled, the address map in Table B3-1 on page B3-259 is the default address map
- when the MPU is enabled, the address map inTable B3-1 on page B3-259 represents a background region for privileged accesses, if privileged software enables this use by setting MPU_CTRL.PRIVDEFENA to 1, see *MPU Control Register, MPU_CTRL* on page B3-295.

See *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv6* on page B3-289 for more information.

B3.1.1 General rules for PPB register accesses

The general rules for the PPB, address range 0xE0000000 to 0xE0100000, are:

- The region is defined as Strongly-ordered memory, see *Strongly-ordered memory* on page A3-53 and *Memory access restrictions* on page A3-54.
- Registers accesses are always accessed little endian regardless of the endian state of the processor.
- The PPB address space only supports aligned word accesses. Byte and halfword access is UNPREDICTABLE.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Note

This is different from ARMv7-M where byte and halfword accesses are supported in several cases. For ARMv6-M, software must perform read-modify-write accesses sequences where it has to modify byte fields within a word in the PPB memory region.

- The term set means writing the value to 1, and the term clear, or cleared, means writing the value to 0. Where the term applies to multiple bits, all bits assume the written value.
- Features are disabled by writing 0 to the corresponding register bit, and enabled by writing 1 to that bit.
- Where a bit is defined as being cleared to 0 on a read, the architecture guarantees the following atomic behavior when a read of the bit coincides with an event that sets the bit to 1:
  - — if the bit reads as one, the bit is cleared to 0 by the read operation
  - — if the bit reads as zero, the bit is set to 1, and cleared to 0 by a subsequent read operation.
- A reserved register or bit field must be treated as UNK/SBZP.
- Unprivileged accesses to the PPB generate a HardFault error, without causing a PPB access.

For debug related resources, see *General rules applying to debug register access* on page C1-318.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.2 System Control Space (SCS)

The SCS is a memory-mapped 4KB address space that provides 32-bit registers for configuration, status reporting and control. The SCS registers divide into the following groups:

- system control and identification
- the CPUID processor identification space
- system configuration and status
- an optional system timer, SysTick
- a *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller* (NVIC)
- system debug, see Chapter C1 *ARMv6-M Debug*.

Table B3-3 defines the address space breakdown of the SCS register groups.

Table B3-3 SCS address space regions

System Control Space, address range `0xE000E000` to `0xE000EFFF`[a]		
Group	**Address Range**	**Notes**
System control and ID registers	`0xE000E000-0xE000E00F`	Includes the Auxiliary Control register.
	`0xE000ED00-0xE000ED8F`	System Control Block.
	`0xE000EF90-0xE000EFCF`	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.
SysTick	`0xE000E010-0xE000E0FF`	Optional System Timer.
NVIC	`0xE000E100-0xE000ECFF`	External interrupt controller.
Debug	`0xE000EDF0-0xE000EEFF`	Debug control and configuration. Applies to Debug Extension only.
MPU	`0xE000ED90-0xE000EDEF`	Optional MPU, see *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv6* on page B3-289.

a. Unassigned addresses are reserved.

The following sections summarize the system control and ID registers:

- *Interrupt Control State Register, ICSR* on page B3-265
- *System control and ID registers* on page B3-263
- *Debug register support in the SCS* on page C1-328.

The following sections summarize the other register groups:

- *The system timer, SysTick* on page B3-275
- *Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller, NVIC* on page B3-281
- *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv6* on page B3-289.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.2.1 About the System Control Block

In an ARMv6-M a *System Control Block* (SCB) in the SCS provides key status information and control features for the processor. The SCB supports:

- Software reset control at various levels
- Base address management for the exception model, by controlling table pointers
- System exception management, including:
  - exception enables
  - setting the status of an exception to pending, or removing the pending status from an exception
  - showing the status of each exception status as inactive, pending, or active
  - setting the priority of the configurable system exceptions
  - providing miscellaneous control functions, and status information.

  This excludes external interrupt handling. The NVIC handles all external interrupts.
- The exception number of the currently executing code and of the highest priority pending exception
- Miscellaneous control and status features
- Debug status information. This is implemented by control and status in the debug specific register region, see Chapter C1 *ARMv6-M Debug* for debug details.

Table B3-4 lists the SCB registers.

B3.2.2 System control and ID registers

Table B3-4 shows the system control and ID registers in address order from the base memory address.

Table B3-4 System control and ID register summary

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE000E008	ACTLR	RW	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*The Auxiliary Control Register, ACTLR* on page B3-274
0xE000ED00	CPUID	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*CPUID Base Register* on page B3-264
0xE000ED04	ICSR	RW	0x00000000	*Interrupt Control State Register, ICSR* on page B3-265
0xE000ED08	VTOR	RW	0x00000000[a]	*Vector Table Offset Register, VTOR* on page B3-267
0xE000ED0C	AIRCR	RW	bits [10:8] = 0b000	*Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR* on page B3-268
0xE000ED10	SCR	RW	bits [4,2,1] = 0b000	Optional *System Control Register, SCR* on page B3-269

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-4 System control and ID register summary (continued)

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE000ED14	CCR	RO	bits [9:3] = 0b1111111	*Configuration and Control Register, CCR* on page B3-271
0xE000ED1C	SHPR2	RW	SBZ[b]	*System Handler Priority Register 2, SHPR2* on page B3-272
0xE000ED20	SHPR3	RW	SBZ[c]	*System Handler Priority Register 3, SHPR3* on page B3-273
0xE000ED24	SHCSR	RW	0x00000000	*System Handler Control and State Register, SHCSR* on page C1-329[d]
0xE000ED30	DFSR	RW	0x00000000	*Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-330[d]

a. See register description for more information.
b. SVCall priority bits [31:30] are zero.
c. SysTick bits [31:30] and PendSV bits [23:22] are zero.
d. Included with the Debug Extension.

The remaining subsections of this section describe the SCB registers.

B3.2.3 CPUID Base Register

The CPUID Base Register characteristics are:

Purpose Provides identification information for the processor.

Usage constraints This register is word accessible only.

It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the information defines the presence of any architectural extension.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-263.

Figure B3-1 shows the bit assignments.

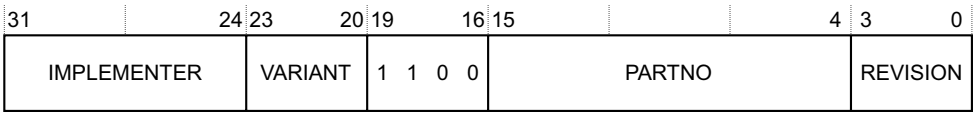


Figure B3-1 CPUID Base Register bit assignments

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-5 shows the CPUID Base Register bit assignments.

Table B3-5 CPUID Base Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:24]	IMPLEMENTER	This field defines the implementer: `0x41` ARM Limited. This is ASCII character A.
[23:20]	VARIANT	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.
[19:16]	ARCHITECTURE	This field defines the architecture: `0xC` ARMv6-M.
[15:4]	PARTNO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.
[3:0]	REVISION	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

B3.2.4 Interrupt Control State Register, ICSR

The ICSR characteristics are:

Purpose Controls and provides status information for the ARMv6-M.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-263.

Figure B3-2 shows the ICSR bit assignments.

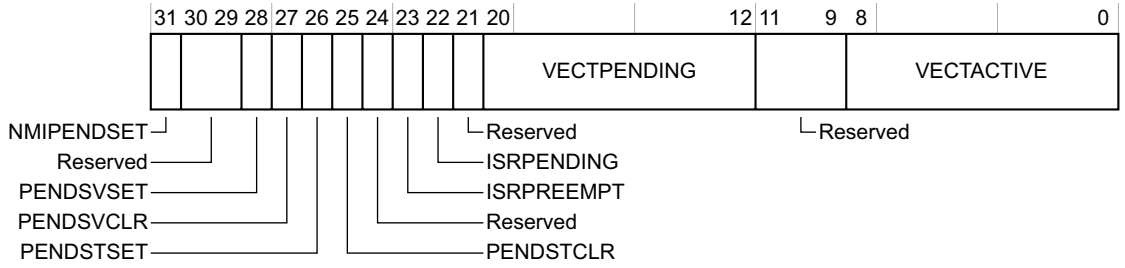


Figure B3-2 ICSR bit assignments

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-6 shows the ICSR bit assignments.

Table B3-6 ICSR bit assignments

Bits	Type	Name	Function
[31]	RW	NMIPENDSET	Activates an NMI exception or reads back the current state: **0** Do not activate. **1** Activate NMI exception. Because NMI is the highest priority exception, it activates as soon as it is registered.
[30:29]	-	-	Reserved.
[28]	RW	PENDSVSET[a]	Sets a pending PendSV interrupt or reads back the current state: **0** Do not set. **1** Set pending PendSV interrupt. Use this normally to request a context switch.
[27]	WO	PENDSVCLR	Clears a pending PendSV interrupt: **0** Do not clear. **1** Clear pending PendSV.
[26]	RW	PENDSTSET[b]	Sets a pending SysTick or reads back the current state: **0** Do not set. **1** Set pending SysTick. When SysTick is not implemented, this bit is RAZ/WI.
[25]	WO	PENDSTCLR	Clears a pending SysTick, whether set here or by the timer hardware: **0** Do not clear. **1** Clear pending SysTick. When SysTick is not implemented, this bit is reserved.
[24]	-	-	Reserved.
[23]	RO	ISRPREEMPT	Indicates whether a pending exception will be serviced on exit from debug halt state: **0** Will not service. **1** Will service a pending exception. This bit applies to the Debug Extension only, otherwise it is reserved.
[22]	RO	ISRPENDING	Indicates if an external configurable, NVIC generated, interrupt is pending: **0** Interrupt is not pending. **1** Interrupt is pending. This bit applies to the Debug Extension only, otherwise it is reserved.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-6 ICSR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Type	Name	Function
[21]	-	-	Reserved.
[20:12]	RO	VECTPENDING	The exception number for the highest priority pending exception. **0** No pending exceptions. The pending state includes the effect of memory-mapped enable and mask registers. It does not include the PRIMASK special-purpose register qualifier.
[11:9]	-	-	Reserved.
[8:0]	RO	VECTACTIVE	The exception number[c] for the current executing exception. **0** Thread mode. This field applies to the Debug Extension only, otherwise it is reserved.

a. writing PENDSVSET and PENDSVCLR to '1' concurrently is UNPREDICTABLE
b. writing PENDSTSET and PENDSTCLR to '1' concurrently is UNPREDICTABLE
c. this is the same value as IPSR[8:0]

B3.2.5 Vector Table Offset Register, VTOR

The VTOR characteristics are:

Purpose Holds the vector table offset address.

Usage constraints The number of bits in the VTOR is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. Unimplemented bits are RAZ/WI.

Configurations The VTOR behavior is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-263.

An implementation can include configuration input signals that determine the reset value of the TBLOFF field, otherwise it resets to zero.

Figure B3-3 shows the VTOR bit assignments.

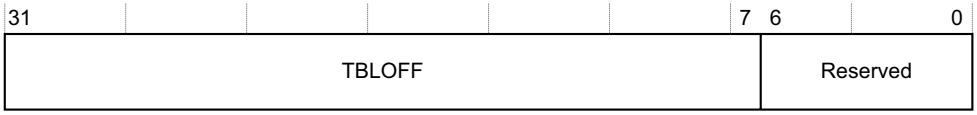


Figure B3-3 VTOR bit assignments

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-7 shows the VTOR bit assignments.

Table B3-7 VTOR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:7]	TBLOFF	Table offset address[a]
[6:0]	-	Reserved

a. The number of implemented bits within TBLOFF are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Note

All bits of the Vector table address that are not defined by the VTOR are zero.

Software can write all 1s to the TBLOFF field and then read the register to find the maximum supported offset value.

B3.2.6 Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR

The AIRCR Register characteristics are:

Purpose Sets or returns interrupt control data.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-263.

Figure B3-4 shows the AIRCR bit assignments.

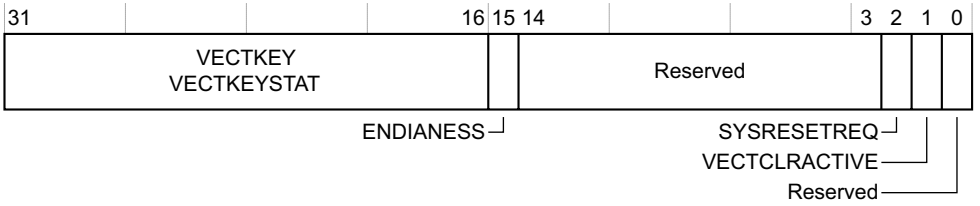


Figure B3-4 AIRCR bit assignments

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-8 shows the AIRCR bit assignments.

Table B3-8 AIRCR bit assignments

Bits	Type	Name	Function
[31:16]	WO	VECTKEY	Vector Key. The value `0x05FA` must be written to this register, otherwise the register write is `UNPREDICTABLE`.
[31:16]	RO	VECTKEYSTAT	UNKNOWN
[15]	RO	ENDIANNESS	Indicates the memory system data endianness: **0** little endian **1** big endian. See *Endian support* on page A3-44 for more information.
[14:3]	-	-	Reserved
[2]	WO	SYSRESETREQ	System Reset Request: **0** do not request a reset. **1** request reset. Writing 1 to this bit asserts a signal to request a reset by the external system. The system components that are reset by this request are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. A Local reset is required as part of a system reset request. A Local reset clears this bit to 0. See *Reset management* on page B1-240 for more information.
[1]	WO	VECTCLRACTIVE	Clears all active state information for fixed and configurable exceptions: **0** do not clear state information. **1** clear state information. The effect of writing a 1 to this bit if the processor is not halted in Debug state is UNPREDICTABLE.
[0]	-	-	Reserved

B3.2.7 System Control Register, SCR

The SCR characteristics are:

Purpose Sets or returns system control data.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Configurations The System Control Register is required when power management support is implemented in the `WFI` and `WFE` hint instructions. See *WFE* on page A6-197 and *WFI* on page A6-198.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-263.

Figure B3-5 shows the SCR bit assignments.

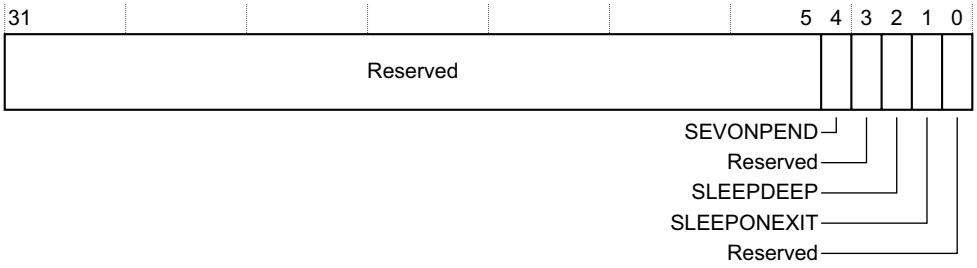


Figure B3-5 SCR bit assignments

Table B3-9 SCR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:5]	-	Reserved.
[4]	SEVONPEND	Determines whether an interrupt transition from inactive state to pending state is a wakeup event: **0** transitions from inactive to pending are not wakeup events. **1** transitions from inactive to pending are wakeup events. See *WFE* on page A6-197 for more information.
[3]	-	Reserved.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-9 SCR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Function
[2]	SLEEPDEEP	Provides a qualifying hint indicating that waking from sleep might take longer. An implementation can use this bit to select between two alternative sleep states: **0** selected sleep state is not deep sleep. **1** selected sleep state is deep sleep. Details of the implemented sleep states, if any, and details of the use of this bit, are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. If the processor does not implement a deep sleep state then this bit can be RAZ/WI
[1]	SLEEPONEXIT	Determines whether, on an exit from an ISR that returns to the base level of execution priority, the processor enters a sleep state: **0** do not enter sleep state. **1** enter sleep state. See *Power management* on page B1-240 for more information.
[0]	-	Reserved.

A debugger can read S_SLEEP to detect if sleeping. See *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-331 for more information.

B3.2.8 Configuration and Control Register, CCR

The CCR Register characteristics are:

Purpose Returns configuration and control data.

Usage constraints This register is RO.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-263.

Figure B3-6 shows the CCR bit assignments.

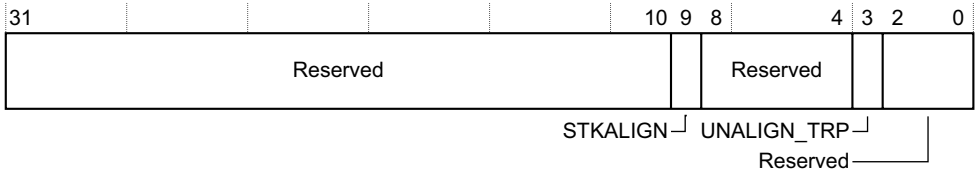


Figure B3-6 CCR bit assignments

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-10 shows the CCR bit assignments.

Table B3-10 CCR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function	
[31:10]	-	Reserved.	
[9]	STKALIGN	Read-As-One	
		1	On exception entry, the SP used prior to the exception is adjusted to be 8-byte aligned and the context to restore it is saved. The SP is restored on the associated exception return.
[8:4]	-	Reserved.	
[3]	UNALIGN_TRP	Read-As-One	
		1	unaligned word and halfword accesses generate a HardFault exception.
[2:0]	-	Reserved.	

B3.2.9 System Handler Priority Register 2, SHPR2

The SHPR2 Register characteristics are:

Purpose Sets or returns priority for system handler 11.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-263.

Figure B3-7 shows the SHPR2 bit assignments.

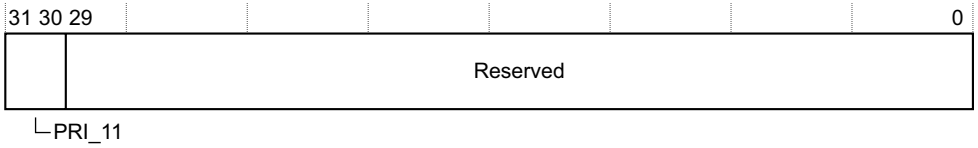


Figure B3-7 SHPR2 Register bit assignments

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-11 shows the SHPR2 bit assignments.

Table B3-11 SHPR2 Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:30]	PRI_11	Priority of system handler 11, SVCall
[29:0]	-	Reserved

B3.2.10 System Handler Priority Register 3, SHPR3

The SHPR2 Register characteristics are:

Purpose Sets or returns priority for system handlers 14-15.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Bits[31:30] are only implemented if the system timer, SysTick is used.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-263.

Figure B3-8 shows the SHPR2 bit assignments.

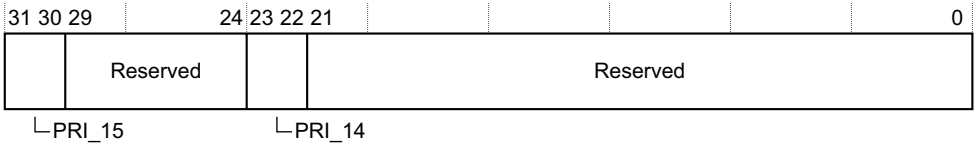


Figure B3-8 SHPR3 Register bit assignments

Table B3-12 shows the SHPR3 bit assignments.

Table B3-12 SHPR3 Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:30]	PRI_15	Priority of system handler 15, SysTick
[29:24]	-	Reserved
[23:2]	PRI_14	Priority of system handler 14, PendSV
[21:0]	-	Reserved

B3.2.11 Fault Status Registers

ARMv6-M only supports fault status information as part of the Debug Extension.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

The Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR, is part of the Debug Extension. See Chapter C1 *ARMv6-M Debug* for a full description of debug support within ARMv6-M and *Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-330 for the Debug Fault Status Register.

B3.2.12 The Auxiliary Control Register, ACTLR

The ACTLR Register characteristics are:

Purpose Provides IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED configuration and control options.

Usage constraints The contents of this register might have IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented. The contents of this register are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-263.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.3 The system timer, SysTick

ARMv6-M supports an optional system timer, SysTick. SysTick provides a simple, 24-bit clear-on-write, decrementing, wrap-on-zero counter with a flexible control mechanism. A system can use this counter in several different ways, including:

- As an RTOS tick timer that fires at a programmable rate, such as 100Hz, and invokes a SysTick routine.
- As a high speed alarm timer using the main processor clock.
- As a variable rate alarm or signal timer. The available duration range depends on the reference clock used and the dynamic range of the counter.
- As a simple counter. Software can use this to measure time to completion and time used.
- As an internal clock source control based on missing or meeting durations. Software can use the COUNTFLAG field in the control and status register to determine whether an action completed within a particular duration, as part of a dynamic clock management control loop.

B3.3.1 SysTick operation

The timer consists of four registers:

- A control and status register. This configures the SysTick clock, enables the counter, enables the SysTick interrupt, and indicates the counter status.
- A counter reload value register.This provides the wrap value for the counter.
- A counter current value register.
- A calibration value register. This indicates the preload value required for a 10ms system clock.

When enabled, the timer counts down from the value in SYST_CVR, see *SysTick Current Value Register, SYST_CVR* on page B3-279. When the counter reaches zero, it reloads the value in SYST_RVR on the next clock edge, see *SysTick Reload Value Register, SYST_RVR* on page B3-278. It then decrements on subsequent clocks. This reloading when the counter reaches zero is called wrapping.

When the counter transitions to zero, it sets the COUNTFLAG status bit to 1. Reading the COUNTFLAG status bit clears it to 0.

Writing to SYST_CVR clears both the register and the COUNTFLAG status bit to zero. This causes the SysTick logic to reload SYST_CVR from SYST_RVR on the next timer clock. A write to SYST_CVR does not trigger the SysTick exception logic.

Reading SYST_CVR returns the value of the counter at the time the register is accessed.

Writing a value of zero to SYST_RVR disables the counter on the next wrap. The SysTick counter logic maintains this counter value of zero after the wrap.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Note

- Setting SYST_RVR to zero has the effect of disabling the SysTick counter on the next wrap, independently of the counter enable bit.
- The SYST_CVR value is UNKNOWN on reset. Before enabling the SysTick counter, software must write the required counter value to SYST_RVR, and then write to SYST_CVR. This clears SYST_CVR to zero. When enabled, the counter reloads the value from SYST_RVR, and counts down from that value, rather than from an arbitrary value.

Software can use the calibration value TENMS to scale the counter to other required clock rates within the dynamic range of the counter.

When the processor is halted in Debug state, the counter does not decrement.

The timer is clocked by a reference clock. Whether the reference clock is the processor clock or an external clock source is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. If an implementation uses an external clock, it must document the relationship between the processor clock and the external reference. This is required for system timing calibration, taking account of metastability, clock skew and jitter.

B3.3.2 System timer register support in the SCS

Table B3-13 summarizes the system timer register support provided within the SCS address map. The SysTick system timer is an optional feature. If SysTick is not implemented, the SysTick registers are reserved.

Table B3-13 SysTick register summary

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE000E010	SYST_CSR	RW	0x00000000 or 0x00000004	*SysTick Control and Status Register, SYST_CSR* on page B3-277
0xE000E014	SYST_RVR	RW	UNKNOWN	*SysTick Reload Value Register, SYST_RVR* on page B3-278
0xE000E018	SYST_CVR	RW	UNKNOWN	*SysTick Current Value Register, SYST_CVR* on page B3-279
0xE000E01C	SYST_CALIB	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*SysTick Current Value Register, SYST_CVR* on page B3-279
…to 0xE000E0FF	-	-	-	Reserved

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.3.3 SysTick Control and Status Register, SYST_CSR

The SYST_CSR Register characteristics are:

Purpose Controls the system timer and provides status data.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations The register is only present if the optional system timer is implemented, otherwise the register is reserved

Attributes See Table B3-13 on page B3-276.

Figure B3-9 shows the SYST_CSR bit assignments.

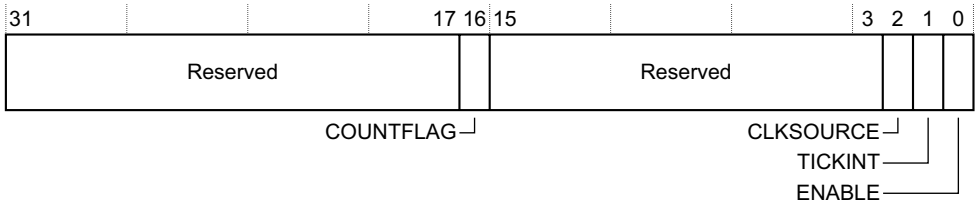


Figure B3-9 SYST_CSR bit assignments

Table B3-14 shows the SYST_CSR bit assignments.

Table B3-14 SYST_CSR bit assignments

Bits	TYPE	Name	Function
[31:17]	-	-	Reserved.
[16]	RO	COUNTFLAG	Indicates whether the counter has counted to 0 since the last read of this register: **0** timer has not counted to 0. **1** timer has counted to 0. COUNTFLAG is set to 1 by a count transition from 1 to 0. COUNTFLAG is cleared to 0 by a read of this register, and by any write to the Current Value register.
[15:3]	-	-	Reserved.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-14 SYST_CSR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	TYPE	Name	Function
[2]	RW	CLKSOURCE	Indicates the SysTick clock source: **0** SysTick uses the optional external reference clock. **1** SysTick uses the processor clock. If no external clock is provided, this bit reads as one and ignores writes.
[1]	RW	TICKINT	Indicates whether counting to 0 causes the status of the SysTick exception to change to pending: **0** count to 0 does not affect the SysTick exception status. **1** count to 0 changes the SysTick exception status to pending. Changing the value of the counter to 0 by writing zero to the SysTick Current Value register to 0 never changes the status of the SysTick exception.
[0]	RW	ENABLE	Indicates the enabled status of the SysTick counter: **0** counter is disabled. **1** counter is operating.

B3.3.4 SysTick Reload Value Register, SYST_RVR

The SYST_RVR Register characteristics are:

Purpose Sets or reads the reload value of the SYST_CVR register.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations The register is only present if the optional system timer is implemented, otherwise the register is reserved

Attributes See Table B3-15 on page B3-279.

Figure B3-10 shows the SYST_RVR bit assignments.

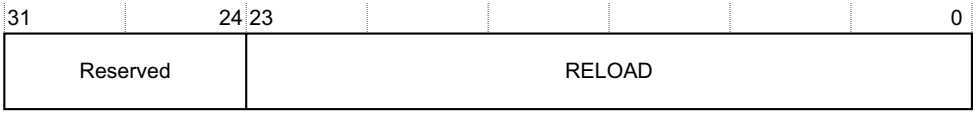


Figure B3-10 SYST_RVR bit assignments

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-15 shows the SYST_RVR bit assignments.

Table B3-15 SYST_RVR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:24]	-	Reserved. RAZ/WI.
[23:0]	RELOAD	The value to load into the SYST_CVR register when the counter reaches 0.

B3.3.5 SysTick Current Value Register, SYST_CVR

The SYST_CVR Register characteristics are:

Purpose Reads or clears the current counter value.

Usage constraints Any write to the register clears the register to 0.

The counter does not provide read-modify-write protection.

Unsupported bits are Read-As-Zero. See *SysTick Reload Value Register, SYST_RVR* on page B3-278.

Configurations The register is only present if the optional system timer is implemented, otherwise the register is reserved

Attributes See Table B3-16.

Figure B3-11 shows the SYST_CVR bit assignments.

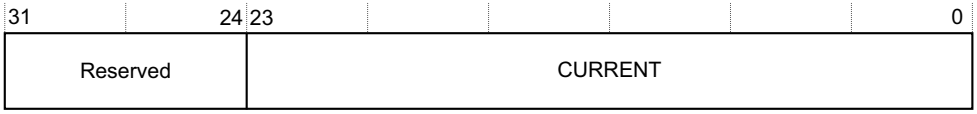


Figure B3-11 SYST_CVR bit assignments

Table B3-16 shows the SYST_CVR bit assignments.

Table B3-16 SYST_CVR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:24]	-	Reserved. RAZ/WI
[23:0]	CURRENT	Current counter value. This is the value of the counter at the time it is sampled.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.3.6 SysTick Calibration Value Register, SYST_CALIB

The SYST_CALIB Register characteristics are:

Purpose Reads the calibration value and parameters for SysTick.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations The register is only present if the optional system timer is implemented, otherwise the register is reserved

Attributes See Table B3-17.

Figure B3-12 shows the SYST_CALIB bit assignments.

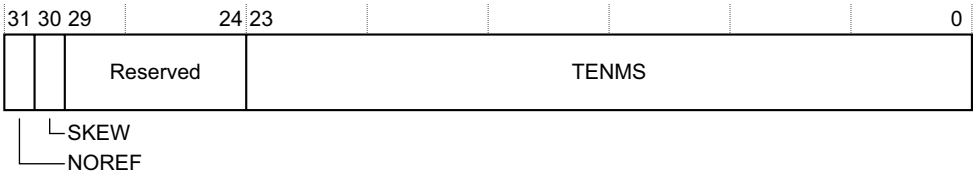


Figure B3-12 SYST_CALIB Register bit assignments

Table B3-17 shows the SYST_CALIB bit assignments.

Table B3-17 SYST_CALIB Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31]	NOREF	Indicates whether the IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED reference clock is provided: **0** the reference clock is implemented. **1** the reference clock is not implemented. When this bit is 1, the CLKSOURCE bit of the SYST_CSR register is forced to 1 and cannot be cleared to 0.
[30]	SKEW	Indicates whether the 10ms calibration value is exact: **0** 10ms calibration value is exact. **1** 10ms calibration value is inexact, because of the clock frequency.
[29:24]	-	Reserved
[23:0]	TENMS	Optionally, holds a reload value to be used for 10ms (100Hz) timing, subject to system clock skew errors. If this field is zero, the calibration value is not known.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.4 Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller, NVIC

ARMv6-M provides an interrupt controller as an integral part of the exception model. The interrupt controller operation aligns with the ARM *General Interrupt Controller* (GIC) specification, defined for use with other architecture variants and ARMv7 profiles.

The ARMv6-M NVIC architecture supports up to 32 discrete interrupts, IRQ[31:0]. The general registers associated with the NVIC are all accessible from a block of memory in the SCS as described in Table B3-18 on page B3-283.

B3.4.1 NVIC operation

ARMv6-M supports level-sensitive and pulse-sensitive, a variant of an edge sensitive, interrupt behavior. This means that both level-sensitive and pulse-sensitive interrupts can be handled. Pulse interrupt sources must be held long enough to be sampled reliably by the processor clock to ensure they are latched and become pending. A subsequent pulse can add the pending state to an active interrupt, making the status of the interrupt active and pending. However, multiple pulses that occur during the active period only register as a single event for interrupt scheduling.

In summary:

- Pulses held for a clock period act like edge-sensitive interrupts. These can become pending again while the interrupt is active.

  Note

  A pulse must be cleared before the assertion of AIRCR.VECTCLRACTIVE or the associated exception return, otherwise the interrupt signal behaves as a level-sensitive input and the pending bit is asserted again.

- Level-sensitive interrupts become pending and activate the interrupt. The ISR then accesses the peripheral, causing it to deassert the interrupt. If the interrupt is still asserted on return from the ISR, it becomes pending again.

All NVIC interrupts have a programmable priority value and an associated exception number as part of the ARMv6-M exception model and its prioritization policy.

The NVIC supports the following features:

- NVIC interrupts can be enabled and disabled by writing to their corresponding Interrupt Set-Enable or Interrupt Clear-Enable register bit-field. The registers use a write-1-to-enable and write-1-to-clear policy, both registers reading back the current enabled state of the corresponding 32 interrupts.

  When an interrupt is disabled, interrupt assertion causes the interrupt to become pending, but the interrupt does not activate. If an interrupt is active when it is disabled, it remains in the active state until this is cleared by a reset or an exception return. Clearing the enable bit prevents any new activation of the associated interrupt.

  An implementation can hard-wire interrupt enable bits to zero if the associated interrupt line does not exist, or hard-wire them to one if the associated interrupt line cannot be disabled.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

- Software can set or remove the pending state of NVIC interrupts using a complementary pair of registers, the Set-Pending Register and Clear-Pending Register. The registers use a write-one-to-enable and write-one-to-clear policy, and a read of either register returns the current pending state of the corresponding 32 interrupts. Writing 1 to a bit in the Clear-Pending Register has no effect on the execution status of an active interrupt.

  It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED for each interrupt line supported, whether an interrupt supports either or both setting and clearing of the associated pending state under software control.

- NVIC interrupts are prioritized by updating an 8-bit field within a 32-bit register, with each register supporting four interrupts. Priorities are maintained according to the ARMv6-M prioritization scheme. See *Exception priorities and preemption* on page B1-221.

External interrupt input behavior

The following pseudocode describes the relationship between external interrupt inputs and the NVIC behavior:

```
// Definitions
// ===========

NVIC[] is an array of active high external interrupt input signals;
    // the type of signal (level or pulse) and its assertion level/sense is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED
    // and might not be the same for all inputs

boolean Edge(integer INTNUM);    // Returns true if on a clock edge NVIC[INTNUM]
                                 // has changed from '0' to '1'
boolean NVIC_Pending[INTNUM];    // an array of pending status bits for the external interrupts
integer INTNUM;                  // the external interrupt number


    // The WriteToRegField helper function returns TRUE on a write of '1' event
    // to the field FieldNumber of the RegName register.

boolean WriteToRegField(register RegName, integer FieldNumber)


boolean ExceptionIN(integer INTNUM);   // returns TRUE if exception entry in progress
                                       // to activate INTNUM
boolean ExceptionOUT(integer INTNUM);  // returns TRUE if exception return in progress
                                       // from active INTNUM

// Interrupt interface
// ===================

sampleInterruptHi = WriteToRegField(AIRCR, VECTCLRACTIVE) || ExceptionOUT(INTNUM);
sampleInterruptLo = WriteToRegField(ICPR, INTNUM);

InterruptAssertion   =  Edge(INTNUM) || (NVIC[INTNUM] && sampleInterruptHi);
InterruptDeassertion =  !NVIC[INTNUM] && sampleInterruptLo;

// NVIC behavior
// =============
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
clearPend = ExceptionIN(INTNUM) || InterruptDeassertion;
setPend   = InterruptAssertion || WriteToRegField(ISPR, INTNUM);

if clearPend && setPend then
    IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether NVIC_Pending[INTNUM] is TRUE or FALSE;
else
    NVIC_Pending[INTNUM] = setPend || (NVIC_Pending[INTNUM] && !clearPend);
```

B3.4.2 NVIC register support in the SCS

The system control region includes status and configuration registers that apply to the NVIC as part of the general exception model.

All other external interrupt specific registers reside within the NVIC region of the SCS. Table B3-18 summarizes the NVIC specific registers in the SCS.

Table B3-18 NVIC register summary

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE000E100	NVIC_ISER	RW	0x00000000	*Interrupt Set-Enable Register, NVIC_ISER* on page B3-284
0xE000E104- 0xE000E17F	-	-	-	Reserved
0xE000E180	NVIC_ICER	RW	0x00000000	*Interrupt Clear Enable Register, NVIC_ICER* on page B3-285
0xE000E184- 0xE000E1FF	-	-	-	Reserved
0xE000E200	NVIC_ISPR	RW	0x00000000	*Interrupt Set-Pending Register, NVIC_ISPR* on page B3-286
0xE000E204- 0xE000E27F	-	-	-	Reserved
0xE000E280	NVIC_ICPR	RW	0x00000000	*Interrupt Clear-Pending Register, NVIC_ICPR* on page B3-287
0xE000E300- 0xE000E3FC	-	-	-	Reserved
0xE000E400- 0xE000E41C	NVIC_IPRn	RW	0x00000000	*Interrupt Priority Registers, NVIC_IPR0 - NVIC_IPR7* on page B3-288
0xE000E420- 0xE000E43C	-	-	-	Reserved

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.4.3 Interrupt Set-Enable Register, NVIC_ISER

The NVIC_ISER characteristics are:

Purpose Enables, or reads the enabled state of one or more interrupts.

Usage constraints Subject to standard PPB usage constraints, see *General rules for PPB register accesses* on page B3-260.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-18 on page B3-283.

Figure B3-13 shows the NVIC_ISER bit assignments.

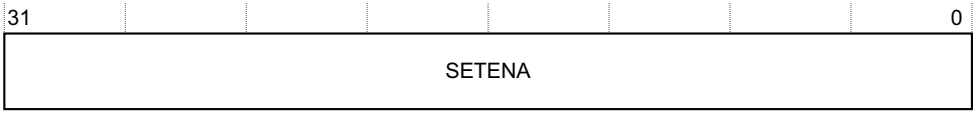


Figure B3-13 NVIC_ISER bit assignments

Table B3-19 shows the NVIC_ISER bit assignments.

Table B3-19 NVIC_ISER bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function		
[31:0]	SETENA	Enables, or reads the enabled state of one or more interrupts. Each bit corresponds to the same numbered interrupt:		
		On reads	**0**	the associated interrupt is disabled.
			1	the associated interrupt is enabled.
		On writes	**0**	no effect.
			1	enable the associated interrupt.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.4.4 Interrupt Clear Enable Register, NVIC_ICER

The NVIC_ICER characteristics are:

Purpose Disables, or reads the enabled state of one or more interrupts.

Usage constraints Subject to standard PPB usage constraints, see *General rules for PPB register accesses* on page B3-260.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-18 on page B3-283.

Figure B3-14 shows the NVIC_ICER bit assignments.

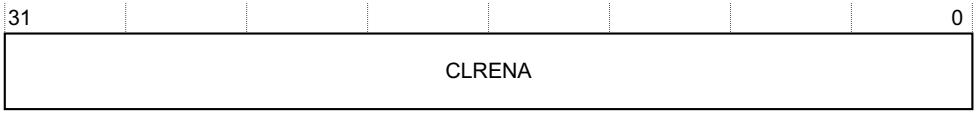


Figure B3-14 NVIC_ICER bit assignments

Table B3-20 shows the NVIC_ICER bit assignments.

Table B3-20 NVIC_ICER bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function		
[31:0]	CLRENA	Disables, or reads the enabled state of one or more interrupts. Each bit corresponds to the same numbered interrupt:		
		On reads	**0**	the associated interrupt is disabled.
			1	the associated interrupt is enabled.
		On writes	**0**	no effect.
			1	disable the associated interrupt.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.4.5 Interrupt Set-Pending Register, NVIC_ISPR

The NVIC_ISPR Register characteristics are:

Purpose On writes, sets the status of one or more interrupts to pending. On reads, shows the pending status of the interrupts.

Usage constraints Subject to standard PPB usage constraints, see *General rules for PPB register accesses* on page B3-260.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-18 on page B3-283.

Figure B3-15 shows the NVIC_ISPR bit assignments.

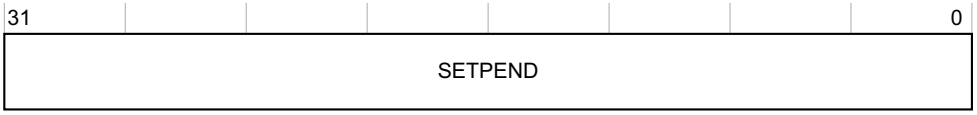


Figure B3-15 NVIC_ISPR bit assignments

Table B3-21 shows the NVIC_ISPR bit assignments.

Table B3-21 NVIC_ISPR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function		
[31:0]	SETPEND	Changes the state of one or more interrupts to pending. Each bit corresponds to the same numbered interrupt:		
		On reads	**0**	the associated interrupt is not pending.
			1	the associated interrupt is pending.
		On writes	**0**	no effect.
			1	change the state of the associated interrupt to pending.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.4.6 Interrupt Clear-Pending Register, NVIC_ICPR

The NVIC_ICPR Register characteristics are:

Purpose On writes, clears the status of one or more interrupts to pending. On reads, shows the pending status of the interrupts.

Usage constraints Subject to standard PPB usage constraints, see *General rules for PPB register accesses* on page B3-260.

Configurations Always implemented.

Attributes See Table B3-18 on page B3-283.

Figure B3-16 shows the NVIC_ICPR bit assignments.

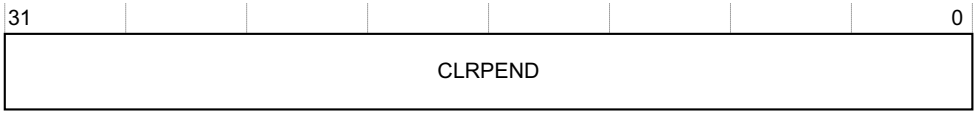


Figure B3-16 NVIC_ICPR bit assignments

Table B3-22 shows the NVIC_ICPR bit assignments.

Table B3-22 NVIC_ICPR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function		
[31:0]	CLRPEND	Changes the state of one or more interrupts to not pending. Each bit corresponds to the same numbered interrupt:		
		On reads	**0**	the associated interrupt is not pending.
			1	the associated interrupt is pending.
		On writes	**0**	no effect.
			1	change the state of the associated interrupt to not pending.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.4.7 Interrupt Priority Registers, NVIC_IPR0 - NVIC_IPR7

The NVIC_IPR characteristics are:

Purpose Sets or reads interrupt priorities

Usage constraints Subject to standard PPB usage constraints, see *General rules for PPB register accesses* on page B3-260.

Configurations Eight NVIC_IPRs are implemented, supporting up to 32 interrupts. These registers are always implemented.

If an interrupt is not implemented, the corresponding PRI_N*x* field can be RAZ/WI.

Attributes See Table B3-18 on page B3-283.

Figure B3-17 shows the NVIC_IPR bit assignments.

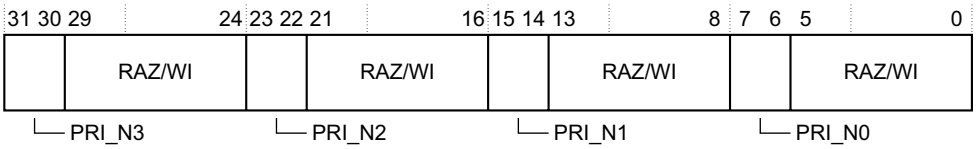


Figure B3-17 NVIC_IPRn bit assignments

Table B3-23 shows the NVIC_IPR bit assignments. In the table, N = 4n, where n is the NVIC_IPR register number. For example, for NVIC_IPR2, n is 2 and N is 8.

Table B3-23 NVIC_IPRn bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:30]	PRI_N3	Priority of interrupt number N+3
[29:24]	-	Reserved, RAZ/WI
[23:22]	PRI_N2	Priority of interrupt number N+2
[21:16]	-	Reserved, RAZ/WI
[15:14]	PRI_N1	Priority of interrupt number N+1
[13:8]	-	Reserved, RAZ/WI
[7:6]	PRI_N0	Priority of interrupt number N
[5:0]	-	Reserved, RAZ/WI

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.5 Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv6

ARMv6-M supports the *Protected Memory System Architecture* (PMSAv6) as an optional extension. A *Memory Protection Unit* (MPU) implements PMSA to protect the system address space by dividing the memory into regions and controlling access rights.

The number of supported regions is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. PMSAv6 can support subregions as small as 32 bytes, but the limited register resources in the 4GB address space mean the MPU provides an inherently coarse-grained protection scheme. The scheme is completely predictive, with all control information held in registers that are closely-coupled to the processor.

It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether a processor includes the PMSAv6 Extension, but if it does, it must also implement the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension. If a processor implements the PMSA Extension, the MPU coexists with the system memory map described in *The system address map* on page B3-258 as described in this section.

The MPU controls access rights to physical addresses. It does not perform address translation.

When the MPU is disabled or not present, the system uses the default system memory map shown in Table B3-1 on page B3-259. When the MPU is enabled, the enabled regions define the system address map with the following restrictions:

- Accesses to the PPB always uses the default system memory map.
- Exception vector reads from the Vector Address Table always use the default system memory map.
- The architecture restricts how the MPU can change the default system memory map attributes for regions in System space, that is, for addresses `0xE0000000` and higher, as follows:
  - System space is always XN, Execute Never
  - the MPU can map System space regions that default to Device memory as Strongly-Ordered memory
  - the effect of remapping a System space region that defaults to Device memory as Normal memory is UNPREDICTABLE.
- When the MPU is enabled, the processor can be configured to use the default system memory map when processing NMI and HardFault exceptions.
- the default system memory map can be configured to provide a background region for privileged accesses. The background region acts as region number -1 and all memory regions configured in the MPU have higher priority than the default memory map.
- A memory access to an address that matches in more than one region uses the highest matching region number for the access attributes.
- A memory access that does not match all access conditions of a region address match, with the MPU enabled, or a background or default memory map match, generates a fault.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.5.1 PMSAv6 MPU operation

ARMv6-M only supports a unified memory model. All enabled regions provide support for instruction and data accesses. ARMv6-M does not support memory maps that are defined independently for instruction and data accesses. However, privileged software can use the XN attribute in the MPU_RASR to specify whether the processor can execute instructions from each region, see *MPU Region Attribute and Size Register, MPU_RASR* on page B3-298.

Privileged software can configure the base address, size and attributes of a region, but all regions must be naturally aligned.

The size of memory regions, in bytes, is a power of 2. The supported sizes are 2^N, where $8 \le N \le 32$. Where there is an overlap between two regions, the region with the highest region number takes priority.

Sub-region support

The MPU can divide each region into eight sub-regions of size $2^{(N-3)}$ and disable the sub-regions on an individual basis. When the processor generates a memory access, the MPU compares the requested memory address with the programmed memory regions When a sub-region is disabled, an access match is required from another region, or background matching if enabled. If an access match does not occur a fault is generated. See *MPU Region Attribute and Size Register, MPU_RASR* on page B3-298.

MPU pseudocode

The following pseudocode defines the operation of an ARMv6-M MPU. The terms used align with the MPU register names and bit field names described in *Register support for PMSAv6 in the SCS* on page B3-293. *Access permission checking* on page B2-252 defines the `CheckPermission()` function.

```
// ValidateAddress()
// =================

AddressDescriptor ValidateAddress(bits(32) address, boolean ispriv, boolean iswrite,
                                  boolean isinstrfetch)

    boolean isvectortablelookup; // TRUE if address associated with exception entry

    AddressDescriptor result;
    Permissions perms;

    result.physicaladdress = address;
    result.memattrs = DefaultMemoryAttributes(address);
    perms = DefaultPermissions(address);

    hit = FALSE;  // assume no valid MPU region and not using default memory map

    isPPBaccess = (address<31:20> == '111000000000');

    if isvectortablelookup || isPPBaccess then
        hit = TRUE;      // use default map for PPB and vector table lookups

    elsif MPU_CTRL.ENABLE == '0' then
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
            if MPU_CTRL.HFNMIENA == '1' then UNPREDICTABLE
            else hit = TRUE; // always use default map if MPU disabled

        elsif MPU_CTRL.HFNMIENA == '0' && (ExecutionPriority() < 0) then
            hit = TRUE;      // optionally use default for HardFault and NMI

        else  // MPU is enabled so check each individual region
            if (MPU_CTRL.PRIVDEFENA == '1') && ispriv then
                hit = TRUE;  // optional default as background for Privileged accesses

            for r = 0 to (UInt(MPU_TYPE.DREGION) - 1)  // highest matching region wins
                bits(16) size_enable    = MPU_RASR[r]<15:0>;
                bits(32) base_address   = MPU_RBAR[r];
                bits(16) access_control = MPU_RASR[r]<31:16>;

                if size_enable<0> == '1' then  // MPU region enabled so perform checks
                    lsbit = UInt(size_enable<5:1>) + 1;
                    if lsbit < 8 then UNPREDICTABLE;

                    if lsbit == 32 || address<31:lsbit> == base_address<31:lsbit> then
                        subregion = UInt(address<lsbit-1:lsbit-3>);
                        if size_enable<subregion+8> == '0' then
                            texcb = access_control<5:3,1:0>;
                            S = access_control<2>;
                            perms.ap = access_control<10:8>;
                            perms.xn = access_control<12>;
                            result.memattrs = DefaultTEXDecode(texcb,S);
                            hit = TRUE;

        if address<31:29> == '111' then  // enforce System space execute never
            perms.xn = TRUE;


        if hit then  // perform check of acquired access permissions
            CheckPermission(perms, address, iswrite, ispriv, isinstrfetch);
        else         // take HardFault if no MPU match or use of default not enabled
            ExceptionTaken(Hardfault);

        return result;

    // DefaultTEXDecode()
    // ==================

    MemoryAttributes DefaultTEXDecode(bits(5) texcb, bit S)

        MemoryAttributes memattrs;

        case texcb of
            when '00000'
                memattrs.type = MemType_StronglyOrdered;
                memattrs.innerattrs = '00';  // Non-cacheable
                memattrs.shareable = TRUE;
            when '00001'
                memattrs.type = MemType_Device;
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
            mematttrs.innerattrs = '00';  // Non-cacheable
            mematttrs.shareable = TRUE;
        when '0001x'
            mematttrs.type = MemType_Normal;
            mematttrs.innerattrs = texcb<1:0>;
            mematttrs.shareable = (S == '1');
        otherwise
            UNPREDICTABLE;               // reserved cases

    // Outer attributes are the same as the inner attributes in all cases.
    mematttrs.outerattrs = mematttrs.innerattrs;

    return mematttrs;
```

MPU fault support

Instruction or data access violations cause a HardFault exception to be generated, see *Fault behavior* on page B1-236.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.5.2 Register support for PMSAv6 in the SCS

The MPU registers are located in the SCS. All of these registers are 32-bits wide and are word accessible only and their addresses are mapped as little endian.

The MPU registers require privileged memory accesses for reads and writes. Any unprivileged access generates a HardFault.

If an ARMv6-M implementation does not support PMSAv6, only the MPU Type Register is required. The MPU Control Register is RAZ/WI, and all other registers in this region are reserved, UNK/SBZP.

Table B3-24 shows the MPU registers.

Table B3-24 MPU register summary

Address	Name	Type	Reset	Description
0xE000ED90	MPU_TYPE	RO	IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED	*MPU Type Register, MPU_TYPE* on page B3-294
0xE000ED94	MPU_CTRL	RW	0x00000000	*MPU Control Register, MPU_CTRL* on page B3-295
0xE000ED98	MPU_RNR	RW	UNKNOWN	*MPU Region Number Register, MPU_RNR* on page B3-296
0xE000ED9C	MPU_RBAR	RW	UNKNOWN	*MPU Region Base Address Register, MPU_RBAR* on page B3-297
0xE000EDA0	MPU_RASR	RW	UNKNOWN	*MPU Region Attribute and Size Register, MPU_RASR* on page B3-298
0xE000EDA4 - 0xE000EDEF	-	…	-	Reserved.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.5.3 MPU Type Register, MPU_TYPE

The MPU_TYPE register characteristics are:

Purpose The MPU Type Register indicates how many regions the MPU supports. Software can use it to determine if the processor implements an MPU.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Always implemented, even in implementations without PMSAv6.

Attributes See Table B3-24 on page B3-293.

Figure B3-18 shows the MPU_TYPE register bit assignments.

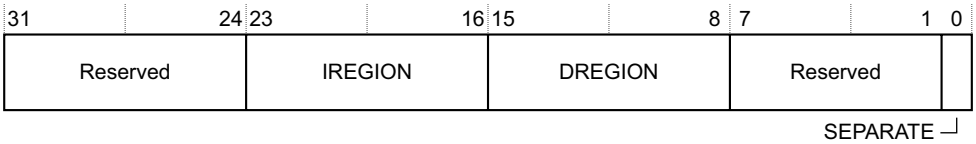


Figure B3-18 MPU_TYPE Register bit assignments

Table B3-25 shows the MPU_TYPE Register bit assignments.

Table B3-25 MPU_TYPE Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:24]	-	Reserved.
[23:16]	IREGION	Instruction region. RAZ. ARMv6-M only supports a unified MPU.
[15:8]	DREGION	Number of regions supported by the MPU. If this field reads-as-zero the processor does not implement an MPU.
[7:1]	-	Reserved.
[0]	SEPARATE	Indicates support for separate instruction and data address maps. RAZ. ARMv6-M only supports a unified MPU.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B3.5.4 MPU Control Register, MPU_CTRL

The MPU_CTRL Register characteristics are:

Purpose Enables the MPU, and when the MPU is enabled, controls whether the default memory map is enabled as a background region for privileged accesses, and whether the MPU is enabled for HardFaults and NMIs.

Usage constraints If no regions are enabled and the PRIVDEFENA and ENABLE bits are set, only privileged code can execute from the system address map.

Configurations If the MPU is not implemented, this register is RAZ/WI.

Attributes See Table B3-24 on page B3-293.

Figure B3-19 shows the MPU_CTRL Register bit assignments.

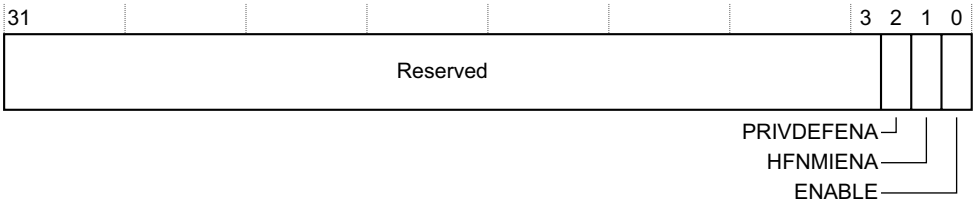


Figure B3-19 MPU_CTRL Register bit assignments

Table B3-26 shows the MPU_CTRL Register bit assignments.

Table B3-26 MPU_CTRL Register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:3]	-	Reserved
[2]	PRIVDEFENA	When the ENABLE bit is set to 1, the meaning of this bit is: **0** Disables the default memory map. Any instruction or data access that does not access a defined region faults. **1** Enables the default memory map as a background region for privileged access. *The system address map* on page B3-258 describes the default memory map. When the ENABLE bit is set to 0, the processor ignores the PRIVDEFENA bit.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-26 MPU_CTRL Register bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Function
[1]	HFNMIENA	The meaning of this bit is: **0** disables the MPU for HardFaults and NMIs. **1** when the ENABLE bit is set to 1, enables the MPU for HardFaults and NMIs. **Note** If HFNMIENA is set to 1 when ENABLE is set to 0, behavior is UNPREDICTABLE.
[0]	ENABLE	Enables the MPU: **0** The MPU is disabled. Privileged and unprivileged accesses use the default memory map. **1** The MPU is enabled.

If no regions are enabled and the PRIVDEFENA and ENABLE bits are set to 1, only privileged code can execute from the system address map.

B3.5.5 MPU Region Number Register, MPU_RNR

The MPU_RNR characteristics are:

Purpose Selects the region currently accessed by MPU_RBAR and MPU_RASR.

Usage constraints Used with MPU_RBAR and MPU_RASR, see *MPU Region Base Address Register, MPU_RBAR* on page B3-297, and *MPU Region Attribute and Size Register, MPU_RASR* on page B3-298.

If an implementation supports *N* regions then the regions number from 0 to (*N*-1), and the effect of writing a value of *N* or greater to the REGION field is UNPREDICTABLE.

Configurations Implemented only if the processor implements an MPU.

Attributes See Table B3-24 on page B3-293.

Figure B3-20 shows the MPU_RNR bit assignments.

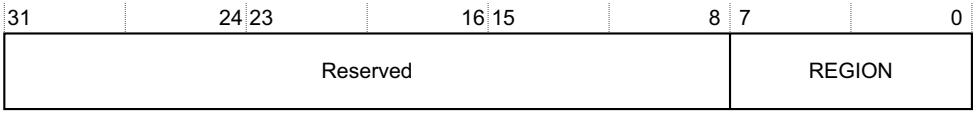


Figure B3-20 MPU_RNR bit assignments

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-27 shows the MPU_RNR bit assignments.

Table B3-27 MPU_RNR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:8]	-	Reserved
[7:0]	REGION	Indicates the memory region accessed by MPU_RBAR and MPU_RSAR

Normally, software must write the required region number to MPU_RNR to select the required memory region, before accessing MPU_RBAR or MPU_RSAR. However, the MPU_RBAR.VALID bit provides an alternative way of writing to MPU_RBAR to update a region base address without first writing the region number to MPU_RNR, see *MPU Region Base Address Register, MPU_RBAR*.

B3.5.6 MPU Region Base Address Register, MPU_RBAR

The MPU_RBAR characteristics are:

Purpose Holds the base address of the region identified by MPU_RNR. On a write, can also be used to update the base address of a specified region, in the range 0 to 15, updating MPU_RNR with the new region number.

Usage constraints Normally, used with MPU_RBAR, see *MPU Region Number Register, MPU_RNR* on page B3-296.

The minimum region alignment required by an MPU_RBAR is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. See the register description for more information about permitted region sizes.

If an implementation supports *N* regions then the regions number from 0 to (*N*-1). If *N* is less than 16 the effect of writing a value of *N* or greater to the REGION field is UNPREDICTABLE.

Configurations Implemented only if the processor implements an MPU.

Attributes See Table B3-24 on page B3-293.

Figure B3-21 shows the MPU_RBAR bit assignments.

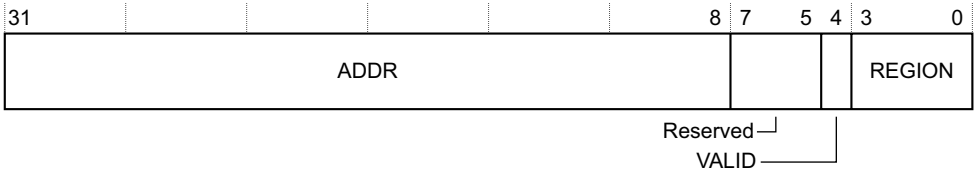


Figure B3-21 MPU_RBAR bit assignments

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-28 shows the MPU_RBAR bit assignments.

Table B3-28 MPU_RBAR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:8]	ADDR	Base address of the region.
[7:5]	-	Reserved.
[4]	VALID	On writes to the register, indicates whether the write must update the base address of the region identified by the REGION field. updating the MPU_RNR to indicate this new region: **0** Update the base address of the region indicated by MPU_RNR, ignoring the value of the REGION field. **1** Update the least-significant four bits of the MPU_RNR.REGION field with MPU_RBAR.REGION field value, writing `0b0000` to bits [7:4] of the MPU_RBAR.REGION field, and updating the base address of that region. This bit reads as zero.
[3:0]	REGION	On writes, can specify the number of the region to update, see VALID field description. On reads, returns bits [3:0] of MPU_RNR.

Software can find the minimum size of region supported by an MPU region by writing all ones to MPURBAR[31:5] for that region, and then reading the register to find the value saved to bits [31:5]. The number of trailing zeros in this bit field indicates the minimum supported alignment and therefore the supported region size. An implementation must support all region size values from the minimum supported to 4GB, see the description of the MPU_RASR.SIZE field in *MPU Region Attribute and Size Register, MPU_RASR*.

Software must ensure that the value written to the ADDR field aligns with the size of the selected region.

B3.5.7 MPU Region Attribute and Size Register, MPU_RASR

The MPU_RASR characteristics are:

Purpose Defines the size, access behavior, and memory type of the region identified by MPU_RNR, and enables that region.

Usage constraints Used with MPU_RBAR, see *MPU Region Number Register, MPU_RNR* on page B3-296.

Writing a SIZE value greater than the maximum size supported by the corresponding MPU_RBAR has an UNPREDICTABLE effect.

The smallest supported region size is 256 bytes. This restricts the lowest possible value of SIZE.

Configurations Implemented only if the processor implements an MPU.

Attributes See Table B3-24 on page B3-293.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Figure B3-22 shows the MPU_RASR bit assignments.

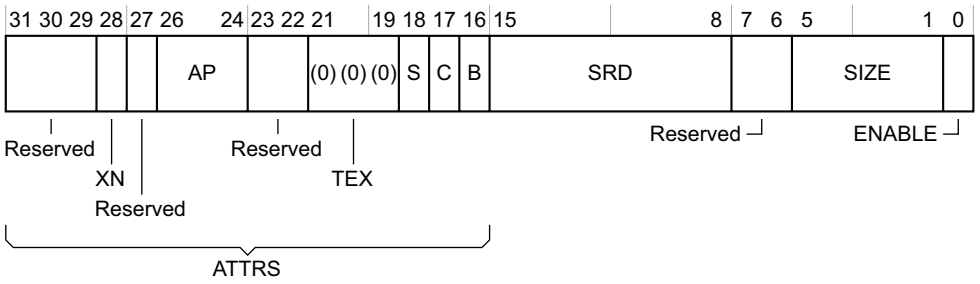


Figure B3-22 MPU_RASR bit assignments

Table B3-29 shows the MPU_RASR bit assignments.

Table B3-29 MPU_RASR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:16]	ATTRS	The MPU Region Attribute field, This field has the following subfields, defined in *Region attribute control* on page B3-300: **XN** MPU_RASR[28] **AP[2:0]** MPU_RASR[26:24] **TEX[2:0]** MPU_RASR[21:19] **S** MPU_RASR[18] **C** MPU_RASR[17] **B** MPU_RASR[16]
[15:8]	SRD	Subregion Disable. For regions of 256 bytes or larger, each bit of this field controls whether one of the eight equal subregions is enabled, see *Memory region subregions* on page B3-300: **0** subregion enabled. **1** subregion disabled.
[7:6]	-	Reserved
[5:1]	SIZE	Indicates the region size. The permitted values for SIZE are 7-31, that is `0b00111`-`0b11111`. The associated region size, in bytes, is $2^{(SIZE+1)}$. SIZE field values less than 7 are reserved, because the smallest supported region size is 256 bytes.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-29 MPU_RASR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Function
[0]	ENABLE	Enables this region: **0** when the MPU is enabled, this region is disabled. **1** When the MPU is enabled, this region is enabled. Enabling a region has no effect unless the MPU_CTRL.ENABLE bit is set to 1, to enable the MPU.

Memory region subregions

The MPU divides the region into eight equally-sized subregions. Setting a bit in the SRD field to 1 disables the corresponding subregion:

- The least significant bit of the field, MPU_RASR[8], controls the subregion with the lowest address range.
- The most significant bit of the field, MPU_RASR[15], controls the subregion with the highest address range.

See *Sub-region support* on page B3-290 for more information.

Region attribute control

The MPU_RASR.ATTRS field defines the memory type, and where necessary the cacheable, shareable, and access and privilege properties of the memory region. Figure B3-22 on page B3-299 shows the subfields of this field, where:

- The TEX[2:0], C, and B bits together indicate the memory type of the region, and:
  - for Normal memory, the cacheable properties of the region
  - for Device memory, whether the region is shareable.

  See Table B3-30 on page B3-301 for the encoding of these bits.
- For Normal memory regions, the S bit indicates whether the region is shareable, see Table B3-30 on page B3-301. For Strongly-ordered and Device memory, the S bit is ignored.
- The AP[2:0] bits indicate the access and privilege properties of the region, see Table B3-31 on page B3-301.
- The XN bit is an Execute Never bit, that indicates whether the processor can execute instructions from the region, see *Execute Never encoding* on page B3-301.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table B3-30 TEX, C, B, and S encoding

TEX[a]	C	B	Memory type	Description, or Normal region cacheability	Shareable?
000	0	0	Strongly-ordered	Strongly ordered	Shareable
000	0	1	Device	Shared device	Shareable
000	1	0	Normal	Outer and inner write-through, no write allocate	S bit[b]
000	1	1	Normal	Outer and inner write-back, no write allocate	S bit[b]

a. All other combinations of TEX, C, and B are reserved.
b. Shareable if the S bit is set to 1, Non-shareable if the S bit is set to 0.

The AP bits, AP[2:0], are used for access permissions. These are shown in Table B3-31.

Table B3-31 Access permissions field encoding

AP[2:0]	Privileged access	Unprivileged access	Notes
000	No access	No access	Any access generates a permission fault
001	Read and write	No access	Privileged access only
010	Read and write	Read only	Any unprivileged write generates a permission fault
011	Read and write	Read and write	Full access
100	UNPREDICTABLE	UNPREDICTABLE	Reserved
101	Read-only	No access	Privileged read-only
110	Read-only	Read-only	Privileged or unprivileged read-only
111	Read-only	Read-only	Privileged or unprivileged read-only

Execute Never encoding

Setting the XN bit to 1 marks the region as Execute Never. For the processor to execute an instruction, the instruction must be in a memory region with:

- read access, indicated by the AP bits, for the appropriate privilege level
- the XN bit set to 0.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Otherwise an attempt to fetch the instruction results in an error and the processor generates a HardFault before attempting to execute the instruction. Table B3-32 shows the encoding of the XN bit:

Table B3-32 Execute Never encoding

XN	Description
0	Fetching and execution of instructions from this region are permitted
1	Neither fetching or execution of instructions from this region are permitted

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Figure C1-1 on page C1-321 is diagrammatic only, and no timings are implied. The numbers in Figure C1-1 on page C1-321 have the following meanings:

1. If **DBGRESTARTED** is asserted HIGH the peripheral asserts **DBGRESTART** HIGH and waits for **DBGRESTARTED** to go LOW.
2. The processor drives **DBGRESTARTED** LOW to deassert the signal and waits for **DBGRESTART** to go LOW.
3. The peripheral drives **DBGRESTART** LOW to deassert the signal. This is the event that indicates to the processor that it can start the Debug to Non-debug state transition phase.
4. The processor leaves Debug state and asserts **DBGRESTARTED** HIGH.

In the process of leaving Debug state the processor clears the **HALTED** signal to LOW. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED when this change occurs relative to the HIGH to LOW change in **DBGRESTART** and the LOW to HIGH change in **DBGRESTARTED**.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C1.4 Debug and reset

ARMv6-M defines two levels of reset as stated in *Overview of the exceptions supported* on page B1-218:

- a Power-on reset
- a Local reset.

Typically, in an ARMv6-M implementation:

- a Power-on reset applies to both the processor and the debug components
- a Local reset applies only to the processor, and not to the debug components.

However, the ARMv6-M architecture requires only that a Power-on reset includes a Local reset. The actual reset scheme is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Note

- ARM recommends that ARMv6-M implementations include separate reset domains for Power-on reset and Local reset.
- ARMv6-M does not provide any means to:
  - debug a Power-on reset
  - differentiate Power-on reset from a Local reset.

Software can initiate a system reset as described in *Reset management* on page B1-240. It can use the reset vector catch control bit, DEMCR.VC_CORERESET, to generate a debug event when the processor comes out of reset. A debug event causes the processor to halt, entering Debug state, when DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN == 1, meaning halting debug is enabled.

The following bit fields are reset by a Power-on reset but not by a Local reset:

- fault flags in the DFSR, see *Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-330
- debug control in the DHCSR, see the notes associated with *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-331
- the vector catch configuration bits, see *Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR on page C1-338*.

For reset and the DWT, see *DWT register summary* on page C1-345. For reset and the BPU, see *BPU register summary* on page C1-352.

The relationship with the debug logic reset and power control signals in the DAP is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. See the *ARM Debug Interface v5 Architecture Specification* for more information.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C1.5 Debug event behavior

A debug event causes one of the following to occur:

- Entry to Debug state. If halting debug is enabled, a debug event halts the processor in Debug state.

  Halting debug is enabled when the DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN bit is set to 1, see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR on page C1-331*.

- If DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN == 0, meaning halting debug is disabled, a breakpoint in the form of a `BKPT` instruction escalates to a HardFault and the processor ignores the other debug events.Whether the processor escalates a breakpoint generated by the BPU to a HardFault, or ignores it, is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. See *Breakpoint Unit* on page C1-351 for more information.

  If halting debug is disabled and such a breakpoint occurs in an NMI or HardFault exception handler, the system locks up with an unrecoverable error. Handling of unrecoverable exceptions in general is described in *Unrecoverable exception cases* on page B1-238.

The Debug Fault Status Register contains a status bit for each debug event, see *Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-330. The bits are write-one-to-clear. These bits are set to 1 when a debug event causes the processor to halt or generate an exception. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the bits are updated when an event is ignored.

Table C1-6 provides a summary of halting debug support.

Table C1-6 Debug related event status

Event cause	DFSR bit	Notes
Internal halt request	HALTED	Step command, processor halt request, and similar
Breakpoint	BKPT	Breakpoint from `BKPT` instruction or match in BPU
Watchpoint	DWTTRAP	Watchpoint match in DWT
Vector catch	VCATCH	DEMCR.VC_HARDERR or DEMCR.VC_CORERESET event match
External	EXTERNAL	**EDBGRQ** asserted

For a description of the vector catch feature, see *Vector catch support* on page C1-339.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C1.5.1 Debug stepping

ARMv6-M supports halting debug stepping. A debugger controls stepping in halting debug by writing to the DHCSR.C_STEP and DHCSR.C_HALT bits, see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-331.

When DHCSR.C_STEP is set to 1, and DHCSR.C_HALT is set to 0 in the same or a subsequent register write, the system:

1. Exits Debug state.
2. Performs one of the following:
   - Executes the next instruction. This is called instruction stepping.
   - Performs an exception entry sequence that stacks the next instruction context. The processor enters the exception handler according to the exception priority and late-arrival rules, and halts on the first instruction of the handler.
   - Executes the next instruction, at which point the exception model causes a change from the expected program flow:
     — The processor performs an exception entry sequence, according to the exception priority and late-arrival rules. The processor halts ready to execute the first instruction of the exception handler taken.
     — If the executed instruction is an exception return instruction, tail-chaining can cause entry to a new exception handler. The processor halts ready to execute the first instruction of the exception handler of the tail-chained exception.

   Note

   The exception entry behavior is not recursive. Only a single `PushStack()` update can occur in a step sequence.

3. Sets the DFSR.HALTED bit to 1 and returns to Debug state.

Optionally, the debugger can set DHCSR.C_MASKINTS to 1 to prevent PendSV, SysTick, and external configurable interrupts from occurring. This is described as masking these interrupts. Table C1-7 on page C1-326 summarizes instruction stepping control.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table C1-7 Debug stepping control using the DHCSR

DHCSR write[a]			Effect
C_HALT	C_STEP	C_MASKINTS[b]	
0	0	0	Exit Debug state and start instruction execution. Exceptions activate according to the exception configuration rules.
0	0	1	Exit Debug state and start instruction execution. PendSV, SysTick and external configurable interrupts are disabled, otherwise exceptions activate according to standard configuration rules.
0	1	0	Exit Debug state, step an instruction and halt. Exceptions activate according to the exception configuration rules.
0	1	1	Exit Debug state, step an instruction and halt. PendSV, SysTick and external configurable interrupts are disabled, otherwise exceptions activate according to standard configuration rules.
1	x	x	Remain in Debug state.

a. Assumes the system is halted, with DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN == 1 and DHCSR.S_HALT == 1 when the write occurs.
b. The effect of a write to the DHCSR that changes C_MASKINTS is UNPREDICTABLE if either:
   - before the write, the value of C_HALT is 0
   - the same write to the DHCSR changes the value of C_HALT from 1 to 0.

   To set C_MASKINTS to 1 and C_HALT to 0 a debugger must first write to the DHCSR to set C_MASKINTS to 1, and then write to the DHCSR again to set C_HALT to 0.

When DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is 1 and DHCSR.S_HALT is 0, meaning the system is running with halting debug enabled, the effect of modifying DHCSR.C_STEP or DHCSR.C_MASKINTS is UNPREDICTABLE.

When DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is 0, the processor ignores the values of DHCSR.C_HALT, DHCSR.C_STEP and DHCSR.C_MASKINTS, and these values are UNKNOWN on DHCSR reads.

Note

If software clears DHCSR.C_HALT to 0 when the processor is in Debug state, a subsequent read of the DHCSR that returns 1 for both C_HALT and S_HALT indicates that the processor has re-entered Debug state because it has detected a new debug event.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C1.5.2 Debug event prioritization

Debug events can be synchronous or asynchronous:

- The following are synchronous debug events:
  - Breakpoint debug events, caused by execution of a BKPT instruction or by a match in the BPU
  - Vector catch debug events
  - Step debug events, caused by DHCSR.C_STEP.
- The following are asynchronous debug events:
  - Watchpoint debug events, including PC match watchpoints
  - DHCSR.C_HALT halt request debug events
  - EDBGRQ external halt request debug events.

A single instruction can generate a number of synchronous debug events. It can also generate a number of asynchronous exceptions. The following principles apply to the prioritization of those exceptions and debug events:

- An instruction fetch that generates an MPU fault, or an XN fault resulting from the default memory map, or a bus error, cannot generate a Breakpoint debug event.
- Step, Breakpoint and Vector catch debug events are associated with the instruction and are taken instead of executing the instruction. Therefore, when a Step, Breakpoint or Vector catch debug event occurs the processor does not generate any other synchronous exception or debug event that might have occurred as a result of executing the instruction.

  Note

  The Step debug event is taken on the instruction following the instruction being stepped. This means prioritization of the event applies relative to any other exception or debug event for the following instruction, not for the instruction being stepped.

- If a single instruction has more than one of the following debug events associated with it, it is UNPREDICTABLE which is taken:
  - Step
  - Breakpoint
  - Vector catch.
- An undefined instruction that generates a HardFault exception does not cause any memory access, and therefore cannot cause an MPU fault or external abort exception or a data match Watchpoint debug event.
- A memory access that generates an MPU fault cannot generate a data match Watchpoint debug event.
- All other synchronous exceptions and synchronous debug events are mutually exclusive, and are derived from decoding the instruction.

The ARM architecture does not define when asynchronous debug events are taken. Therefore the prioritization of asynchronous debug events is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C1.6 Debug register support in the SCS

The debug provision in the System Control Block comprises:

- Two handler-related flag bits, ISRPREEMPT and ISRPENDING, see *Interrupt Control State Register, ICSR* on page B3-265.
- The SHCSR, see *System Handler Control and State Register, SHCSR* on page C1-329.
- The DFSR, see *Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-330.

Although the SHCSR and DFSR are SCB registers, they are described in this section, with the other debug registers.

The architecture defines additional debug registers in the DCB. Table C1-8 shows these registers in address order. All registers are 32-bits wide. See the register descriptions for details of the reset values of the RW registers.

Note

The DWT, BPU, ROM table, DCB, and the SHCSR and DFSR registers are accessible through the DAP interface. Access from the processor is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Table C1-8 DCB register summary

Address	Name	Type	Function
0xE000EDF0	DHCSR	RW	*Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR on page C1-331*
0xE000EDF4	DCRSR	WO	*Debug Core Register Selector Register, DCRSR* on page C1-335
0xE000EDF8	DCRDR	RW	*Debug Core Register Data Register, DCRDR* on page C1-337
0xE000EDFC	DEMCR	RW	*Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR on page C1-338*
0xE000EE00 to 0xE000EEFF	-	-	Reserved for Debug Extension

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C1.6.1 System Handler Control and State Register, SHCSR

The SHCSR Register characteristics are:

Purpose Controls and provides the status of system handlers.

Usage constraints *Debug register support in the SCS* on page C1-328 describes access restrictions to the SHCSR.

Configurations Implemented only as part of the Debug Extension.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-263.

Figure C1-2 shows the SHCSR bit assignments.

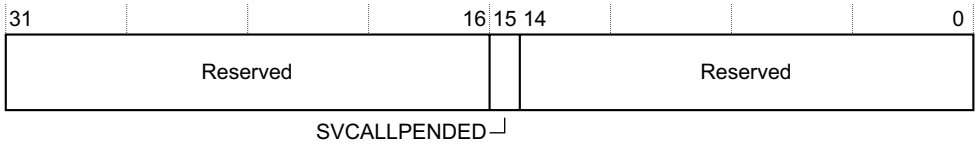


Figure C1-2 SHCSR bit assignments

Table C1-9 shows the SHCSR bit assignments.

Table C1-9 SHCSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function	
[31:16]	-	Reserved.	
[15]	SVCALLPENDED	**0**	SVCall is not pending.
		1	SVCall is pending[a].
		This bit reflects the pending state on a read, and updates the pending state, to the value written, on a write.	
[14:0]	-	Reserved.	

a. Pending state bits are set to 1 when an exception occurs, and are cleared to 0 when an exception becomes active.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C1.6.2 Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR

The DFSR characteristics are:

Purpose Provides the top level reason why a debug event has occurred

Usage constraints Writing 1 to a register bit clears that bit to 0.

A read of the HALTED bit by an instruction executed by stepping returns an UNKNOWN value, For more information see *Debug stepping* on page C1-325.

Configurations Implemented only as part of the Debug Extension.

Attributes See Table B3-4 on page B3-263. A Power-on reset clears the defined register bits to 0. A Local reset does not affect the value of the register.

Figure C1-3 shows the DFSR bit assignments.

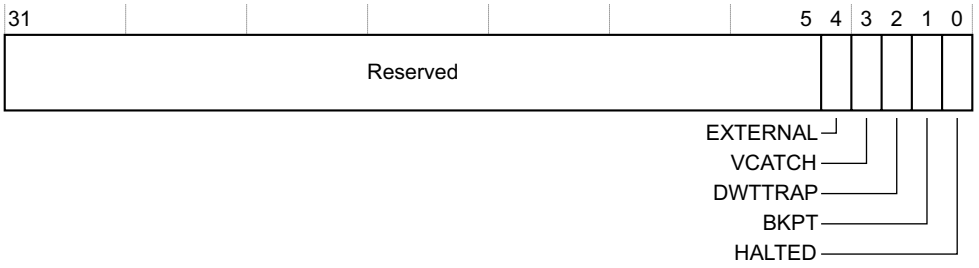


Figure C1-3 DFSR bit assignments

Table C1-10 shows the DFSR bit assignments.

Table C1-10 DFSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:5]	-	Reserved
[4]	EXTERNAL	Indicates an asynchronous debug event generated because of **EDBGRQ** being asserted: **0** no **EDBGRQ** debug event. **1** **EDBGRQ** debug event.
[3]	VCATCH	Indicates whether a vector catch debug event was generated: **0** no vector catch debug event generated. **1** vector catch debug event generated. The corresponding FSR shows the primary cause of the exception.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table C1-10 DFSR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Function
[2]	DWTTRAP	Indicates a debug event generated by the DWT: **0** no debug events generated by the DWT. **1** at least one debug event generated by the DWT.
[1]	BKPT	Indicates a debug event generated by `BKPT` instruction execution or a breakpoint match in the BPU: **0** no breakpoint debug event. **1** at least one breakpoint debug event.
[0]	HALTED	Indicates a debug event generated by a C_HALT or C_STEP request, triggered by a write to the DHCSR: **0** no active halt request debug event. **1** halt request debug event active. See *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* for more information.

C1.6.3 Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR

The DHCSR characteristics are:

Purpose Controls halting debug.

Usage constraints

- When C_DEBUGEN is set to 1, C_STEP and C_MASKINTS must not be modified when the processor is running.

  Note

  S_HALT is 0 when the processor is running.

- When C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, the processor ignores the values of all other bits in this register.
- For more information on the use of DHCSR, see *Debug stepping* on page C1-325.

Configurations Implemented only as part of the Debug Extension.

Attributes See Table C1-8 on page C1-328.

Figure C1-4 on page C1-332 shows the DHCSR bit assignments.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

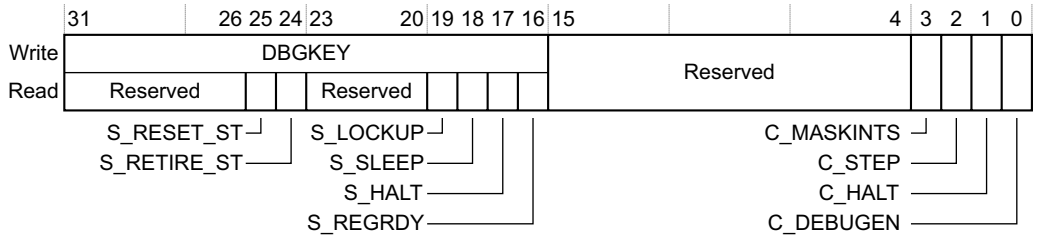


Figure C1-4 DHCSR bit assignments

Table C1-11 shows the DHCSR bit assignments.

Table C1-11 DHCSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Access	Function
[31:16]	DBGKEY	WO	Debug key: Software must write `0xA05F` to this field to enable write accesses to bits [15:0], otherwise the processor ignores the write access.
[31:26]	-	RO	Reserved
[25]	S_RESET_ST	RO	Indicates whether the processor has been reset since the last read of DHCSR: **0** No reset since last DHCSR read. **1** At least one reset since last DHCSR read. This is a sticky bit, that clears to 0 on a read of DHCSR.
[24]	S_RETIRE_ST	RO	When not in Debug state, indicates whether the processor has completed the execution of an instruction since the last read of DHCSR: **0** No instruction has completed since last DHCSR read. **1** At least one instructions has completed since last DHCSR read. This is a sticky bit, that clears to 0 on a read of DHCSR. This bit is UNKNOWN: • after a Local reset, but is set to 1 as soon as the processor completes execution of an instruction • when S_LOCKUP is set to 1 • when S_HALT is set to 1. When the processor is not in Debug state, a debugger can check this bit to determine if the processor is stalled on a load, store or fetch access.
[23:20]	-	-	Reserved

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table C1-11 DHCSR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Access	Function
[19]	S_LOCKUP	RO	Indicates whether the processor is locked up because of an unrecoverable exception: **0** Not locked up. **1** Locked up. See *Unrecoverable exception cases* on page B1-238 for more information. This bit can only read as 1 when accessed by a remote debugger using the DAP. The value of 1 indicates that the processor is running but locked up. The bit clears to 0 when the processor enters Debug state.
[18]	S_SLEEP	RO	Indicates whether the processor is sleeping: **0** Not sleeping. **1** Sleeping. The debugger must set the DHCSR.C_HALT bit to 1 to gain control, or wait for an interrupt or other wakeup event to wakeup the system.
[17]	S_HALT	RO	Indicates whether the processor is in Debug state: **0** Not in Debug state. **1** In Debug state.
[16]	S_REGRDY	RO	A handshake flag for transfers through the DCRDR: • Writing to DCRSR clears the bit to 0. • Completion of the DCRDR transfer then sets the bit to 1. For more information about DCRDR transfers see *Debug Core Register Data Register, DCRDR* on page C1-337. **0** There has been a write to the DCRDR, but the transfer is not complete. **1** The transfer to or from the DCRDR is complete. This bit is only valid when the processor is in Debug state, otherwise the bit is UNKNOWN.
[15:4]	-	-	Reserved

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table C1-11 DHCSR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Access	Function
[3]	C_MASKINTS	RW	When debug is enabled, the debugger can write to this bit to mask PendSV, SysTick and external configurable interrupts: **0** Do not mask. **1** Mask PendSV, SysTick and external configurable interrupts. The effect of any attempt to change the value of this bit is UNPREDICTABLE unless both: • before the write to DHCSR, the value of the C_HALT bit is 1 • the write to the DHCSR that changes the C_MASKINTS bit also writes 1 to the C_HALT bit This means that a single write to DHCSR cannot set the C_HALT to 0 and change the value of the C_MASKINTS bit. The bit does not affect NMI. When DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, the value of this bit is UNKNOWN. For more information about the use of this bit see Table C1-7 on page C1-326. This bit is UNKNOWN after a Power-on reset.
[2]	C_STEP	RW	Processor step bit. The effects of writes to this bit are: **0** Single-stepping disabled. **1** Single-stepping enabled. For more information about the use of this bit see Table C1-7 on page C1-326. This bit is UNKNOWN after a Power-on reset.
[1]	C_HALT	RW	Processor halt bit. The effects of writes to this bit are: **0** Request a halted processor to run. **1** Request a running processor to halt. Table C1-7 on page C1-326 shows the effect of writes to this bit when the processor is in Debug state. This bit is UNKNOWN after a Power-on reset.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table C1-11 DHCSR bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Access	Function
[0]	C_DEBUGEN	RW	Halting debug enable bit: **0** Halting debug disabled. **1** Halting debug enabled. If a debugger writes to DHCSR to change the value of this bit from 0 to 1, it must also write 0 to the C_MASKINTS bit, otherwise behavior is UNPREDICTABLE. This bit can only be written from the DAP. Access to the DHCSR from software running on the processor is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. However, writes to this bit from software running on the processor are ignored. This bit is 0 after a Power-on reset.

C1.6.4 Debug Core Register Selector Register, DCRSR

The DCRSR characteristics are:

Purpose With the DCRDR, see *Debug Core Register Data Register, DCRDR* on page C1-337, the DCRSR provides debug access to the ARM core registers and special-purpose registers. A write to DCRSR specifies the register to transfer, whether the transfer is a read or a write, and starts the transfer.

Usage constraints This register is only accessible in Debug state.

For information about using this register see *Use of DCRSR and DCRDR* on page C1-338.

Configurations Implemented only as part of the Debug Extension.

Attributes See Table C1-8 on page C1-328.

Figure C1-5 shows the DCRSR bit assignments.

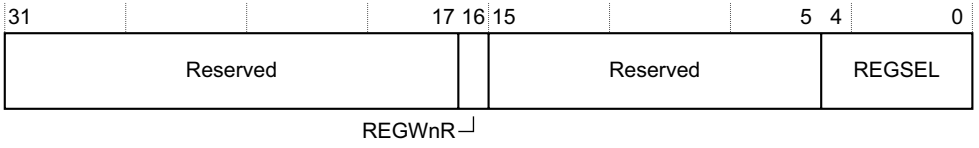


Figure C1-5 DCRSR bit assignments

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table C1-12 shows the DCRSR bit assignments

Table C1-12 DCRSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:17]	-	Reserved
[16]	REGWnR	Specifies the type of access for the transfer: **0** read. **1** write.
[15:5]	-	Reserved
[4:0]	REGSEL	Specifies the ARM core register or special-purpose register to transfer: `0b00000-0b01100` ARM core registers R0-R12. For example, `0b00000` specifies R0, and `0b00101` specifies R5. `0b01101` The current SP. See also values `0b10001` and `0b10010`. `0b01110` LR. `0b01111` DebugReturnAddress, see *The DebugReturnAddress value*. `0b10000` xPSR. `0b10001` Main stack pointer, MSP. `0b10010` Process stack pointer, PSP. `0b10100` **Bits [31:24]** CONTROL **Bits [23:8]** Reserved **Bits [7:0]** PRIMASK. In each field, the valid bits are packed with leading zeros. For example, DCRDR[31:26] is `0b000000`. All other values are reserved.

Note

When the processor is in Debug state, the debugger must preserve the Exception number bits in the IPSR, otherwise behavior is UNPREDICTABLE.

The DebugReturnAddress value

DebugReturnAddress is the address of the first instruction to be executed on exit from Debug state. This address indicates the point in the execution stream where the debug event was invoked. For a hardware or a software breakpoint, this is the address of the breakpointed instruction. For all other debug events, including PC match watchpoints, DebugReturnAddress is the address of the first instruction that both:

- in a simple sequential execution of the program, executes after the instruction that caused the debug event

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

- has not been executed.

Before entering Debug state, the processor has executed all instructions that are earlier in a simple sequential execution of the program than the instruction indicated by DebugReturnAddress.

Bit [0] of a DebugReturnAddress value is RAZ/SBZ. When writing a DebugReturnAddress, writing bit [0] of the address does not affect the EPSR.T bit, see *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-212.

C1.6.5 Debug Core Register Data Register, DCRDR

The DCRDR characteristics are:

Purpose With the DCRSR, see *Debug Core Register Selector Register, DCRSR* on page C1-335, the DCRDR provides debug access to the ARM core registers and special-purpose registers. The DCRDR is the data register for these accesses.

Usage constraints See *Use of DCRSR and DCRDR* on page C1-338 for constraints that apply to particular transfers using the DCRSR and DCRDR.

Configurations Implemented only as part of the Debug Extension.

Attributes See Table C1-8 on page C1-328.

Figure C1-6 shows the DCRDR bit assignments

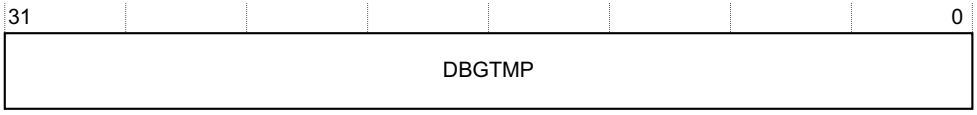


Figure C1-6 DCRDR bit assignments

Table C1-13 shows the DCRDR bit assignments

Table C1-13 DCRDR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:0]	DBGTMP	Data temporary cache, for reading and writing registers. This register is UNKNOWN: • on reset • when DHCSR.S_HALT = 0. • when DHCSR.S_REGRDY = 0 during execution of a DCRSR based transaction that updates the register

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Use of DCRSR and DCRDR

In Debug state, writing to the DCRSR clears the DHCSR.S_REGRDY bit to 0, and the processor then sets the bit to 1 when the transfer between the DCRDR and the ARM core register or special-purpose register completes. For more information about the DHCSR.S_REGRDY bit see *Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-331.

This means that:

- To transfer a data word to an ARM core register or special-purpose register, a debugger:
  1. Writes the required word to DCRDR.
  2. Writes to the DCRSR, with the REGSEL value indicating the required register, and the REGWnR bit as 1 to indicate a write access.

     This write clears the DHCSR S_REGRDY bit to 0.
  3. Polls DHCSR until DHCSR.S_REGRDY reads-as-one. This shows that the processor has transferred the DCRDR value to the selected register.
- To transfer a data word from an ARM core register or special-purpose register, a debugger:
  1. Writes to the DCRSR, with the REGSEL value indicating the required register, and the REGWnR bit as 0 to indicate a read access.

     This write clears the DHCSR.S_REGRDY bit to 0.
  2. Polls DHCSR until DHCSR.S_REGRDY reads-as-one. This shows that the processor has transferred the value of the selected register to DCRDR.
  3. Reads the required value from DCRDR.

When using this mechanism to write to the ARM core registers or special-purpose registers:

- All bits of the xPSR registers are fully accessible. The effect of writing an illegal value is UNPREDICTABLE.

  Note

  This differs from the behavior of `MSR` and `MRS` instruction accesses to the xPSR, where some bits RAZ, and some bits are ignored on writes.
- The debugger can write to the DebugReturnAddress, and on exiting Debug state the processor starts executing from this updated address.

C1.6.6 Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR

The DEMCR characteristics are:

Purpose Manages vector catch behavior and enables the DWT.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Implemented only as part of the Debug Extension.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Attributes See Table C1-8 on page C1-328. A Power-on reset sets all register bits to 0. A Local reset sets DWTENA to 0 but does not affect VC_HARDERR or VC_CORERESET.

Figure C1-7 shows the DEMCR bit assignments:

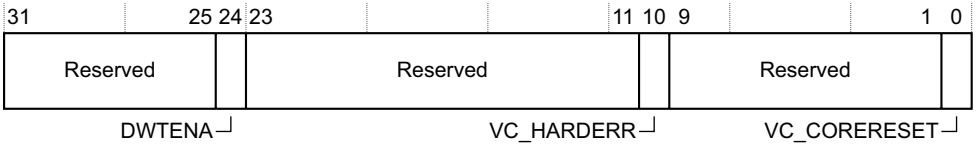


Figure C1-7 DEMCR bit assignments

Table C1-14 shows the DEMCR bit assignments.

Table C1-14 DEMCR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:25]	-	Reserved
[24]	DWTENA	Global enable for all features configured and controlled by the DWT unit: **0** DWT disabled. **1** DWT enabled. When DWTENA is set to 0 DWT registers return UNKNOWN values on reads. In addition, it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the processor ignores writes to the DWT while DWTENA is 0.
[23:11]	-	Reserved
[10]	VC_HARDERR	Enable halting debug trap on a HardFault exception. **0** halting debug trap disabled. **1** halting debug trap enabled. If DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, the processor ignores the value of this bit.
[9:1]	-	Reserved.
[0]	VC_CORERESET	Enable Reset Vector Catch. This causes a Local reset to halt a running system: **0** Reset Vector Catch disabled. **1** Reset Vector Catch enabled. If DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 0, the processor ignores the value of this bit.

Vector catch support

Vector catch is the mechanism for generating a debug event and entering Debug state when a particular exception occurs.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

The conditions for a vector catch are:

- DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN is set to 1
- one or both of DEMCR.VC_HARDERR or DEMCR.VC_CORERESET, the vector catch enable bits, is set to 1
- the associated exception becomes active.

When these conditions are met, the processor halts execution on the first instruction of the exception handler and enters Debug state.

Note

- Exception entry sets the Debug Fault Status Register bits to 1. A debugger can use these bits to help determine the source of the error. See *Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-330 for more information.
- The vector catch mechanism guarantees that the processor enters Debug state without executing any instruction after the instruction that caused the exception. However, saved context might include information on a lockup situation, or on a higher priority pending exception, for example a pending NMI exception detected on reset.

Late arrival and derived exceptions can occur, postponing when the processor halts. See *Late-arriving exceptions* on page B1-232 and *Derived exceptions on exception entry* on page B1-233 for more information.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C1.7 The Data Watchpoint and Trace unit

The *Data Watchpoint and Trace* (DWT) unit provides the following:

- external PC sampling using a PC sample register.
- comparators, that support:
  - watchpoints, for data address matching
  - PC watchpoints, for instruction address matching.

Note

The reporting behavior of a PC watchpoint is different from a `BKPT` instruction or breakpoint detection in a BPU, see Table C1-6 on page C1-324 for details.

The PC sampling feature, DWT_PCSR, and watchpoint support operate independently of each other. See *Program counter sampling support* on page C1-344 for more information. The number of watchpoints supported is defined in the DWT Control Register, DWT_CTRL, see *Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-346. Watchpoint support uses a set of compare, mask and function registers:

- DWT_COMPx
- DWT_MASKx
- DWT_FUNCTIONx.

See *Comparator registers, DWT_COMPx* on page C1-347, *Comparator Mask registers, DWT_MASKx* on page C1-348, and *Comparator Function registers, DWT_FUNCTIONx* on page C1-349 for more information.

Watchpoint events result in a processor halt and entry to Debug state.

The following sections describe the DWT operation:

- *The DWT comparators*
- *Program counter sampling support* on page C1-344
- *DWT register summary* on page C1-345.

C1.7.1 The DWT comparators

The DWT_COMPx, DWT_MASKx, and DWT_FUNCTIONx register sets provide the programming interface for the type of match to perform, and the action to take on a match. The number of register sets supported is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED and can be determined by reading the NUMCOMP field in the DWT_CTRL register.

ARMv6-M supports:

- data address matching and creation of a watchpoint event
- instruction address matching and creation of a PC watchpoint event.

This is controlled by the DWT_FUNCTIONx registers as illustrated in Table C1-15 on page C1-342.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

DWT_COMPx contains the reference value COMP for the comparator. This value is compared against an input value to determine a match.

For instruction and data address matching the input value is masked. The number of input value bits masked, MASK, is defined in DWT_MASKx[4:0]. The maximum address mask range supported, up to 2GB, is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. An address match for a 32-bit instruction must match on the first halfword of the instruction. An address match on only the second halfword of a 32-bit instruction results in UNPREDICTABLE behavior.

Note

The recommended mechanism for generating a breakpoint on a single instruction address is to use the BPU, see *Breakpoint Unit* on page C1-351, where supported. The DWT based mechanism must be used to generate a PC matching event on a range of addresses.

Table C1-15 General DWT function support

DWT_FUNCTIONx	Comparator		Function Description/Action
Bits [3:0]	Input[a]	Access	Match(Input, COMP) == TRUE
0000			Disabled
0001	-	-	Reserved
0010	-	-	Reserved
0011	-	-	Reserved
0100	Iaddr	-	PC watchpoint event
0101	Daddr	RO	Watchpoint event
0110	Daddr	WO	Watchpoint event
0111	Daddr	RW	Watchpoint event
1xxx	-	-	Reserved

a. Daddr: data access address match. Iaddr: instruction address match.

A watchpoint event is asynchronous to the instruction that caused it. The DebugReturnAddress value for a watchpoint event must be that of an instruction to be executed after the instruction responsible for generating the watchpoint.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Instruction address matching

All comparators support instruction address matching. Comparator operation is UNPREDICTABLE unless:

- if masking is not used, the DWT_COMP*n* value is halfword aligned
- if masking is used, the DWT_COMP*n* value is the masked address for comparison.

For an instruction address match on the address of a NOP instruction, it is UNPREDICTABLE whether a watchpoint debug event occurs or not.

In the following cases, it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether a watchpoint debug event occurs on an instruction address match:

- the addressed instruction generates a Prefetch Abort exception
- the addressed instruction is executed with CPSR.T set to 0
- the addressed instruction generates a breakpoint debug event.

The comparator behavior is defined as follows:

```
// InstructionAddressMatch()
// =========================

boolean InstructionAddressMatch(integer N, bits(32) Iaddr)

    assert N < UInt(DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP);

    valid = DWT_FUNCTION[N].FUNCTION == '0100';     // Condition for selecting Iaddr

    if valid then
        mask = ZeroExtend(Ones(UInt(DWT_MASK[N].MASK)), 32);
        // UNPREDICTABLE if COMP does not meet alignment and masking conditions
        if !IsZero(DWT_COMP[N] AND mask) || IsZero(DWT_COMP[N]<0>) then UNPREDICTABLE;
        match = ((Iaddr AND NOT(mask)) == DWT_COMP[N]);
    else
        match = FALSE;

    return match;
```

Data address matching

It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether a vector table read performed as part of exception processing is considered as a memory read-access for the purpose of watchpoint matching. ARMv6-M only supports aligned accesses. Unaligned accesses take a HardFault exception as described in *Alignment support* on page A3-43 and Table B1-6 on page B1-237. Data address matching comparator behavior is defined as follows:

```
// DataAddressMatch()
// ==================

boolean DataAddressMatch(integer N, bits(32) Daddr, integer size, boolean read)

    assert N < UInt(DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP);
    assert size == 1 || size == 2 || size == 4;
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
case DWT_FUNCTION[N].FUNCTION of
    when '0000'  valid = FALSE;   // Comparator disabled
    when '0100'  valid = FALSE;   // See InstructionAddressMatch()
    when '0101'  valid = read;
    when '0110'  valid = !read;
    when '0111'  valid = TRUE;
    otherwise  UNPREDICTABLE;     // Reserved settings

if valid then
    mask = ZeroExtend(Ones(UInt(DWT_MASK[N].MASK)), 32);
    if !IsZero(DWT_COMP[N] AND mask) then UNPREDICTABLE;

    case size
        when 1  comp = DWT_COMP[N];
        when 2  comp = DWT_COMP[N]<31:1>:'0';
        when 4  comp = DWT_COMP[N]<31:2>:'00';

    match = ((Daddr AND NOT(mask)) == comp);
else
    match = FALSE;

return match;
```

C1.7.2 Program counter sampling support

The DWT Program Counter Sampling Register, DWT_PCSR, is an IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED option in ARMv6-M. The register is defined so that a debugger can access it without changing the behavior of any code currently executing on the device. This provides a mechanism for coarse-grained non-intrusive profiling of code executing on the processor.

The DWT_PCSR is a word-accessible read-only register. Writes to the register are ignored. Byte or halfword reads are UNPREDICTABLE. When the register is read it returns one of the following:

- the address of an instruction *recently executed* by the processor
- `0xFFFFFFFF` if DWT_PCSR is implemented and any of the following apply:
  - the processor is in Debug state
  - the processor is in a state and mode where non-invasive debug is not permitted
  - the address of a recently-executed instruction is not available.
- RAZ/WI if DWT_PCSR is not implemented.

Note

- There is no architectural definition of *recently executed.* The delay between an instruction being executed by the processor and its address appearing in the DWT_PCSR is not defined. There is no guaranteed relationship between the program counter for a piece of code designed to read the DWT_PCSR and the value read. The DWT_PCSR is intended only for use by an external agent to provide statistical information for code profiling. Read accesses made to the DWT_PCSR directly by the ARM processor can return an UNKNOWN value.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

- A debug agent must not rely on a return value of 0xFFFFFFFF to indicate that the processor is halted. The DHCSR.S_HALT bit must be used for this purpose.

The value read always references an instruction that would be executed in a simple sequential execution of the program. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether instructions that do not pass their condition codes can be referenced, but ARM recommends that these instructions can be referenced.

An implementation must not sample any value that references an instructions that is fetched but not executed.

Note

A value that references an instruction that was abandoned to enable exception-handling is permitted.

A read access from the DWT_PCSR returns an UNKNOWN value when the DEMCR.DWTENA bit is set to 0.

C1.7.3 DWT register summary

The DWT is programmed using the registers described in Table C1-16.

Note

The DWT, BPU, ROM table, DCB, and debug registers in the SCS are accessible through the DAP interface. Access from the processor is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Table C1-16 DWT register summary

Address	Name	Type	Function
0xE0001000	DWT_CTRL	RO	*Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-346
0xE000101C	DWT_PCSR	RO	*Program Counter Sample Register, DWT_PCSR* on page C1-347
0xE0001020	DWT_COMPx	RW	*Comparator registers, DWT_COMPx* on page C1-347
0xE0001024	DWT_MASKx	RW	*Comparator Mask registers, DWT_MASKx* on page C1-348
0xE0001028	DWT_FUNCTIONx	RW	*Comparator Function registers, DWT_FUNCTIONx* on page C1-349

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Control register, DWT_CTRL

The DWT_CTRL register characteristics are:

Purpose Defines the number of comparators implemented.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Implemented as part of the Debug Extension.

Attributes See Table C1-16 on page C1-345.

Figure C1-8 shows the DWT_CTRL register bit assignments.

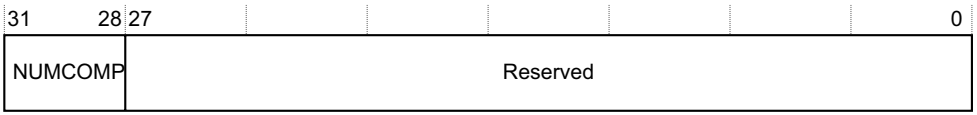


Figure C1-8 DWT_CTRL register bit assignments

Table C1-17 shows the DWT_CTRL register bit assignments.

Table C1-17 DWT_CTRL register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:28]	NUMCOMP	Number of comparators available: **0** no comparator support.
[27:0]	-	Reserved.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Program Counter Sample Register, DWT_PCSR

The DWT_PCSR characteristics are:

Purpose Samples the current value of the program counter.

Usage constraints The register value is UNKNOWN on reset.

Note

Unless DWT_PCSR reads as `0xFFFFFFFF`, under the conditions described in *Program counter sampling support* on page C1-344, bit [0] is RAZ. When RAZ, bit [0] does not reflect instruction set state as is the case with similar functionality in other ARM architecture profiles.

Configurations This register is an IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED option in ARMv6-M, see *Program counter sampling support* on page C1-344. If not implemented, this register is RAZ/WI.

Attributes See Table C1-16 on page C1-345.

Figure C1-9 shows the DWT_PCSR bit assignments.

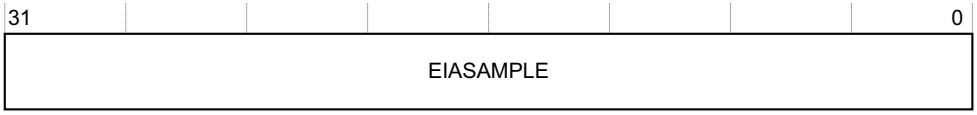


Figure C1-9 DWT_PCSR bit assignments

Table C1-18 shows the DWT_PCSR bit assignments.

Table C1-18 DWT_PCSR bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:0]	EIASAMPLE	Executed Instruction Address sample value

Comparator registers, DWT_COMPx

The DWT_COMPx register characteristics are:

Purpose Provides a reference value for use by comparator `x`.

Usage constraints The value is UNKNOWN on reset.

Configurations Implemented when DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP is non-zero. DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP defines the number of implemented DWT_COMPx registers, from 0 to (NUMCOMP-1). Unimplemented registers are UNK/SBZP

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Attributes See Table C1-16 on page C1-345.

Figure C1-10 shows the DWT_COMPx register bit assignments.

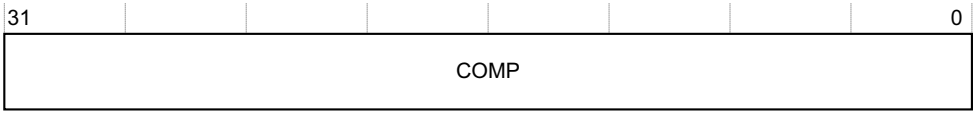


Figure C1-10 DWT_COMPx register bit assignments

Table C1-19 shows the DWT_COMPx register bit assignments.

Table C1-19 DWT_COMPx register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:0]	COMP	Reference value for comparison. See *The DWT comparators* on page C1-341.

Comparator Mask registers, DWT_MASKx

The DWT_MASKx register characteristics are:

Purpose Provides the size of the ignore mask applied to the access address range matching by comparator x.

Usage constraints The value is UNKNOWN on reset.

Configurations Implemented when DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP is non-zero. DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP defines the number of implemented DWT_MASKx registers, from 0 to (NUMCOMP-1). Unimplemented registers are UNK/SBZP.

Attributes See Table C1-16 on page C1-345.

Figure C1-11 shows the DWT_MASKx register bit assignments.

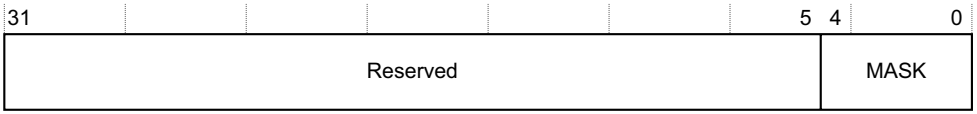


Figure C1-11 DWT_MASKx register bit assignments

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table C1-20 shows the DWT_MASKx register bit assignments.

Table C1-20 DWT_MASKx register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:5]	-	Reserved
[4:0]	MASK	The size of the ignore mask applied to address range matching. See *The DWT comparators* on page C1-341 for the usage model. The mask range is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. Writing all ones to this field and reading it back can be used to determine the maximum mask size supported.

Comparator Function registers, DWT_FUNCTIONx

The DWT_FUNCTIONx register characteristics are:

Purpose Controls the operation of the comparator DWT_COMPx.

Usage constraints See the footnotes in *DWT_FUNCTIONx register bit assignments* on page C1-350 for the usage constraints of individual fields.

Configurations Implemented when DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP is non-zero. DWT_CTRL.NUMCOMP defines the number of implemented DWT_FUNCTIONx registers, from 0 to (NUMCOMP-1). Unimplemented registers are UNK/SBZP.

Attributes See Table C1-16 on page C1-345.

Figure C1-12 shows the DWT_FUNCTIONx register bit assignments.

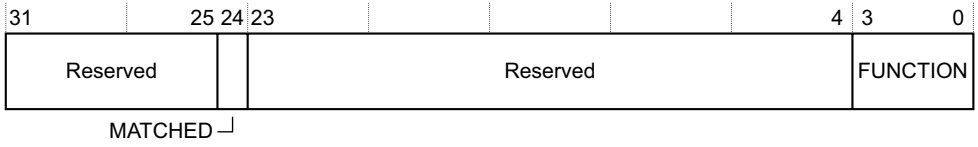


Figure C1-12 DWT_FUNCTIONx register bit assignments

Table C1-21 on page C1-350 shows the DWT_FUNCTIONx register bit assignments.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table C1-21 DWT_FUNCTIONx register bit assignments

Bits	Name	TYPE	Function
[31:25]	=	-	Reserved
[24]	MATCHED	RO	Comparator match. It indicates that the operation defined by FUNCTION has occurred since the bit was last read: **0** the associated comparator has matched. **1** the associated comparator has not matched. Reading the register clears this bit to 0.
[23:4]	-	RW	Reserved
[3:0]	FUNCTION	RW	Select action on comparator match. See Table C1-15 on page C1-342 for information about the values to use for FUNCTION. This field is set to 0 on a Power-on reset.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C1.8 Breakpoint Unit

The *Breakpoint Unit* (BPU) provides support for breakpoint functionality on instruction fetches.

C1.8.1 BPU operation

There are two types of register:

- a breakpoint control register, BP_CTRL
- breakpoint comparator registers, BP_COMPx.

The number of instruction address comparators is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED and can be read from the BP_CTRL register, see *Breakpoint Control register, BP_CTRL* on page C1-352.

The BP_CTRL register provides a global enable bit for the BPU, along with ID fields indicating the numbers of Breakpoint Comparator registers provided.

Each Breakpoint Comparator Register includes its own enable bit that comes into effect when the global enable bit is set to 1. The comparators match instruction fetches from the Code memory region, meaning they operate only on instruction read accesses. The comparators do not match data read or data write accesses.

Address matching can be performed on the upper halfword, lower halfword or both halfwords:

- For 16-bit instructions, halfword matches always generate a breakpoint for the associated instruction.
- For 32-bit instructions, a breakpoint must be configured to match the first halfword or both halfwords of the instruction. It is UNPREDICTABLE whether breakpoint matches on only the address of the second halfword of a 32-bit instruction generate a debug event.

Note

It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether a breakpoint event is generated when debug is disabled, that is, when DHCSR.C_DEBUGEN == 0. When no breakpoint event is generated, the breakpointed instruction exhibits its normal architectural behavior. When a breakpoint event is generated, it is escalated to HardFault, see *Debug event behavior* on page C1-324.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C1.8.2 BPU register summary

Table C1-22 shows the BPU registers.

Note

The DWT, BPU, ROM table, and debug registers in the SCS are accessible through the DAP interface. Access from the processor is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Table C1-22 BPU register summary

Address	Name	Type	Function
0xE0002000	BP_CTRL	RW	*Breakpoint Control register, BP_CTRL*
0xE0002008	BP_COMPx	RW	*Breakpoint Comparator registers, BP_COMPx* on page C1-354

Breakpoint Control register, BP_CTRL

The BP_CTRL register characteristics are:

Purpose Provides BPU implementation information, and the global enable for the BPU.

Usage constraints There are no usage constraints.

Configurations Implemented as part of the Debug Extension.

Attributes See Table C1-22.

Figure C1-13 shows the BP_CTRL register bit assignments.

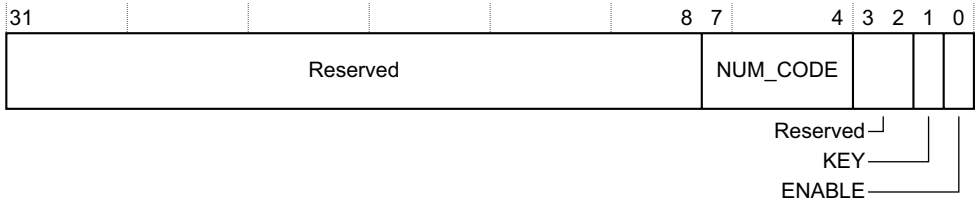


Figure C1-13 BP_CTRL register bit assignments

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table C1-23 shows the BP_CTRL register bit assignments.

Table C1-23 BP_CTRL register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:8]	-	Reserved
[7:4]	NUM_CODE	The number of breakpoint comparators. If NUM_CODE is zero, the implementation does not support any comparators.
[3:2]	-	Reserved
[1]	KEY	RAZ on reads, SBO, for writes. If written as zero, the write to the register is ignored.
[0]	ENABLE	Enables the BPU: **0** BPU is disabled. **1** BPU is enabled. This bit is set to 0 on a Power-on reset.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Breakpoint Comparator registers, BP_COMPx

The BP_COMPx register characteristics are:

Purpose Holds a breakpoint address for comparison with instruction addresses in the Code memory region, see *The system address map* on page B3-258 for more information.

Usage constraints A comparator can only be enabled when BP_CTRL.ENABLE is set to 1.

Configurations Implemented when BP_CTRL.NUM_CODE is non-zero.

BP_CTRL.NUM_CODE defines the number of implemented BP_COMPx registers, from 0 to (NUM_CODE-1). Unimplemented registers are UNK/SBZP.

Attributes See Table C1-22 on page C1-352.

Figure C1-14 shows the BP_COMPx register bit assignments.

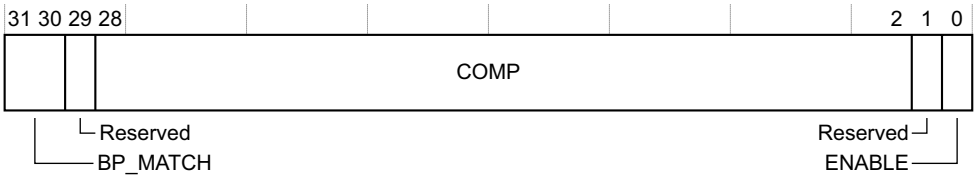


Figure C1-14 BP_COMPx register bit assignments

Table C1-24 shows the BP_COMPx register bit assignments.

Table C1-24 BP_COMPx register bit assignments

Bits	Name	Function
[31:30]	BP_MATCH	BP_MATCH defines the behavior when the COMP address is matched: **00** no breakpoint matching. **01** breakpoint on lower halfword, upper is unaffected. **10** breakpoint on upper halfword, lower is unaffected. **11** breakpoint on both lower and upper halfwords. The field is UNKNOWN on reset.
[29]	-	Reserved

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table C1-24 BP_COMPx register bit assignments (continued)

Bits	Name	Function
[28:2]	COMP	Stores bits [28:2] of the comparison address. The comparison address is compared with the address from the Code memory region. Bits [31:29] and [1:0] of the comparison address are zero. The field is UNKNOWN on Power-on reset
[1]	-	Reserved
[0]	ENABLE	Enables the comparator: **0** comparator is disabled. **1** comparator is enabled. This bit is set to 0 on a Power-on reset. **Note** BP_CTRL.ENABLE must also be set to 1 to enable a comparator.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Part D
Appendices

Appendix A
ARMv6-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs

This appendix describes the ARMv6-M implementation of the ARMv6-M CoreSight Infrastructure IDs. It contains the following section:

- *CoreSight infrastructure IDs for an ARMv6-M implementation* on page AppxA-360.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A.1 CoreSight infrastructure IDs for an ARMv6-M implementation

ARMv6-M implementations support SCS, BPU, and DWT blocks along with a ROM table as illustrated in Table C1-4 on page C1-319. The ROM table IDs are based on CoreSight, ARM's system debug architecture. The *CoreSight Architecture Specification* defines the CoreSight architecture programmers' model.This defines a 4KB register space for each CoreSight component. Each 4KB register block subdivides into the following sections:

- a component ID, held in the Component ID Registers at offsets `0xFF0` to `0xFFF`
- a peripheral ID, held in the Peripheral ID Registers at offsets `0xFD0` to `0xFEF`
- CoreSight management registers, at offsets `0xF00` to `0xFCF`
- device specific registers, at offsets `0x000` to `0xEFF`.

To determine the topology of the ARMv6-M debug infrastructure, ROM table entries indicate whether a block is present. Presence of an entry guarantees support of the ARMv6-M programming requirements for the entry. Additional functionality requires additional support. ARM strongly recommends CoreSight as the recommended framework for this support.

A debugger can use the CPUID support in the SCS to determine details of the architecture variant and features that the processor supports.

Table A-1 shows the component ID and peripheral ID register formats.

Table A-1 Component and Peripheral ID register formats

Address offset	Value[a]	Symbol	Name	Contents
`0xFFC`	`0x000000B1`	CID3	Component ID3	Preamble
`0xFF8`	`0x00000005`	CID2	Component ID2	Preamble
`0xFF4`	`0x000000X0`	CID1	Component ID1	Bits [7:4] Component Class Bits [3:0] Preamble
`0xFF0`	`0x0000000D`	CID0	Component ID0	Preamble
`0xFEC`	`0x000000YY`	PID3	Peripheral ID3	Bits [7:4] RevAnd, minor revision field Bits [3:0], if non-zero, indicate a customer-modified block
`0xFE8`	`0x000000YX`	PID2	Peripheral ID2	Bits [7:4] Revision Bit [3] == 1: JEDEC assigned ID fields Bits [2:0] JEP106 ID code [6:4]
`0xFE4`	`0x000000XY`	PID1	Peripheral ID1	Bits [7:4] JEP106 ID code [3:0] Bits [3:0] Part Number [11:8]
`0xFE0`	`0x000000YY`	PID0	Peripheral ID0	Part Number [7:0]

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table A-1 Component and Peripheral ID register formats (continued)

Address offset	Value[a]	Symbol	Name	Contents
0xFDC	0x00000000	PID7	Peripheral ID7	Reserved
0xFD8	0x00000000	PID6	Peripheral ID6	Reserved
0xFD4	0x00000000	PID5	Peripheral ID5	Reserved
0xFD0	0x000000YX	PID4	Peripheral ID4	Bits [7:4] 4KB count Bits [3:0] JEP106 continuation code

a. For entries in the Value column, bits identified as X are defined by the CoreSight Architecture Specification, and bits identified as Y are IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

In ARMv6-M, all CoreSight registers are accessed as words. Any 8-bit or 16-bit registers defined in the *CoreSight Architecture Specification* are accessed as zero-extended words.

For more information about the registers and their bit fields, see the CoreSight programmers' model in the *CoreSight Architecture Specification*.

Note

The JEDEC defined fields refer to the JEDEC JEP106 code of the block designer. The combination of part number and designer fields must be unique.

Table A-2 lists the CoreSight management registers.

Table A-2 ARMv6-M CoreSight management registers

Component class[a]	Address offset	Type	Register name	Notes
0x1, ROM table	0xFCC	RO	MEMTYPE	Bits [31:1] RAZ. Bit [0] is set to 1 to indicate the system memory is accessible through the DAP.
0x9, Debug component	0xFB4	RO	Lock Status (LSR)	Optional in ARMv6-M. For more information, see *Architectural requirements for the Software Lock mechanism* on page AppxA-362.
0x9, Debug component	0xFB0	WO	Lock Access (LAR)	

a. For information on component classes, see the Component ID register information in *CoreSight Architecture Specification*.

ARM recommends that all reserved register space is CoreSight compliant or RAZ.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

See the *CoreSight Architecture Specification* for the complete description of the CoreSight management registers

A.1.1 Architectural requirements for the Software Lock mechanism

The LAR and LSR registers shown in Table A-2 on page AppxA-361 provide the Software Lock mechanism for a CoreSight component. Access to these registers is defined independently for each interface to a component. This means that support for the Software Lock mechanism is defined independently for each interface. For a particular interface:

- if the Software Lock is supported, the LAR and LSR must be accessible using that interface, and:
  - LSR is read-only
  - LAR is write-only.
- if the Software Lock is not supported, the LAR and LSR locations are RAZ/WI.

ARM recommends that the Software Lock is not supported for accesses from the DAP. For the ARMv6-M architecture and the ARMv7-M architecture profile, it is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether the Software Lock is supported for accesses from the DAP.

In addition, for ARMv6-M, the behavior of software accesses to a CoreSight component from the processor is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Appendix B
Deprecated and Obsolete Features

This appendix identifies deprecated and obsolete features in the ARMv6-M architecture. It contains the following sections:

- *Deprecated features of the ARMv6-M architecture* on page AppxB-364
- *Obsolete features of the ARMv6-M architecture* on page AppxB-365.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B.1 Deprecated features of the ARMv6-M architecture

Deprecated features of the Thumb instruction set that affect instructions supported by ARMv6-M are as follows:

- use of the PC as <Rd> or <Rm> in a 16-bit ADD (SP plus register) instruction
- use of the SP as <Rm> in a 16-bit CMP (register) instruction
- use of <Rn> as the lowest-numbered register in the register list of a 16-bit STM instruction with base register writeback
- use of MOV (register) instructions in which both <Rd> and <Rm> are the SP or PC.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

B.2 Obsolete features of the ARMv6-M architecture

Early versions of the ARMv6-M architecture permitted the implementation of a version of the architecture with the following characteristics:

- SP_process implemented as RAZ/WI
- CONTROL.SPSEL implemented as RAZ/WI
- the SVC instruction is UNDEFINED
- SCR, SHPR2 and SHPR3 implemented as RAZ/WI
- ICSR[28:25] implemented as RAZ/WI
- no support for the SVCall and PendSV exceptions.

ARM deprecates any implementation of the ARMv6-M architecture with these characteristics, and from the introduction of the Unprivileged/Privileged and PMSA extensions such an implementation is obsolete.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Appendix C
ARMv7-M Differences

This appendix compares the ARMv6-M and ARMv7-R architecture profiles, identifying their similarities and differences. It contains the following sections:

- *ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M compatibility* on page AppxC-368
- *About the ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M architecture profiles* on page AppxC-369
- *Instruction support* on page AppxC-370
- *Programmers' model support* on page AppxC-371
- *Memory model support* on page AppxC-373
- *System Control Space register support* on page AppxC-375
- *Debug support* on page AppxC-377.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C.1 ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M compatibility

In general, ARMv6-M is upwardly compatible with ARMv7-M, meaning that application level and system level software developed for ARMv6-M can execute unmodified on ARMv7-M. Table C-1 provides information about the upward software compatibility paths between ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M when the architecture extensions are included.

Table C-1 ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M software compatibility

Software developed for	Is compatible with these implementations
ARMv6-M	ARMv6-M with Unprivileged/Privileged Extension
	ARMv6-M with Unprivileged/Privileged Extension and PMSAv6-M
	All ARMv7-M
ARMv6-M with Unprivileged/Privileged Extension	ARMv6-M with Unprivileged/Privileged Extension and PMSAv6
	All ARMv7-M
ARMv6-M with Unprivileged/Privileged Extension and PMSAv6	ARMv7-M with PMSAv7

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C.2 About the ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M architecture profiles

At the binary level, ARMv6-M is derived from, and software compatible with, ARMv7-M. This compatibility applies when moving from ARMv6-M to ARMv7-M only. ARMv7-M is not downward-compatible with ARMv6-M. The simplifications provided in ARMv6-M affect the application level, system level and debug capabilities. At the application level, ARMv6-M is backward-compatible with ARMv4T, ARMv5T and ARMv6 Thumb code.

By understanding the similarities and differences, it is possible to:

- minimize the effort required to support software across the range of Thumb devices
- generate a system architecture that enables straightforward migration from ARMv6-M to ARMv7-M.

Note

Compatibility assumes that:

- system level support, such as memory provision and the number and assignment of interrupts, is the same, or a superset, of ARMv6-M.
- the initialization assures compatibility of ARMv6-M reserved registers. For example, CCR.UNALIGN_TRP = 1, and CCR.STKALIGN = 1.

See the *ARMv7-M Architecture Reference Manual* for a complete description of the ARMv7-M architecture.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C.3 Instruction support

ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M execute instructions in Thumb state only. In addition to the 16-bit Thumb instruction set as defined for ARMv6, ARMv6-M supports:

- the extended range form of the `BL` instruction
- an M-profile version of the 16-bit `CPS` system control instruction
- the M-profile versions of the 32-bit `MRS`, and `MSR` system control instructions
- the 32-bit `DMB`, `DSB` and `ISB` barrier instructions
- the 16-bit forms of the NOP-compatible hint instructions `NOP`, `SEV`, `WFE`, `WFI` and `YIELD`.

In addition, the ARMv7-M implementation of the Thumb instruction set includes an extensive set of 32-bit load, store and data processing instructions.

Note

ARMv6-M does not support exclusive access instructions such as `LDREX`, or `STREX`, or any form of atomic swap instruction. Software must take account of this in multiprocessing environments using shared memory.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C.4 Programmers' model support

ARMv6-M, without the Unprivileged/Privileged Extension, supports privileged execution only, meaning that the system resources can always be configured and controlled. ARMv7-M supports privileged and unprivileged execution. While both profiles share a common exception entry and exit model, ARMv6-M has limitations in its support of exception types, and how they are configured and controlled. A general assumption is that faults are considered fatal in ARMv6-M with very limited support for fault recovery. Table C-2 compares the features of the two programmers' models.

Table C-2 Programmers' model feature comparison

Unextended ARMv6-M	ARMv7-M
Default implementation includes privileged execution only. Implementations with Unprivileged/Privileged Extension support privileged and unprivileged execution.	Privileged and unprivileged execution supported.
It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether vector table base address is configurable.	Configurable vector table base address.
Reset, NMI and HardFault fixed priority exceptions.	Reset, NMI and HardFault fixed priority exceptions.
SysTick and its exception support are optional.	SysTick is part of the base architecture.
Support for 4 levels of priority (2 bits), no priority grouping.	3-bit to 8-bit priority support including priority grouping.
Reduced exception priority management: PRIMASK special-purpose register. No support for changing the priority of configurable exceptions when they are active.	Dynamic exception priority control: PRIMASK, FAULTMASK, BASEPRI special-purpose registers. Dynamic management of configurable exceptions supported.
All faults reported as HardFault[a].	MemManage, UsageFault and BusFault exceptions with support for escalation to HardFault.
No fault status information other than through debug support and DFSR. Faults considered fatal.	FAR and FSR support as applicable for all fault exceptions including debug. Supports recoverable faults.
Stack alignment is mandatory, see *Stack alignment on exception entry* on page B1-227.	Stack alignment is a configurable option, controlled by the CCR.STKALIGN bit.
Late-arrival exception selection on exception entry permitted.	Late-arrival exception selection on exception entry permitted.
No validity checks on exception return.	Exception return validity checks.
Up to 32 external interrupts in the NVIC.	Up to 496 external interrupts in the NVIC.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table C-2 Programmers' model feature comparison (continued)

Unextended ARMv6-M	ARMv7-M
Default memory map with reduced capability MPU protected memory management option.	Default memory map with MPU protected memory management option.
A simplified set of memory-mapped system control registers in the System Control Space. Bit fields and whole registers in some cases become reserved in line with the reduced functionality. Debug support is in general both reduced and only available through the DAP.	See the *ARMv7-M Architecture Reference Manual* for a complete listing of the ARMv7-M base architecture and debug register support.
Debug Extension supports halting debug only. No debug monitor support.	Debug support part of the base architecture. Debug monitor and halting debug support.

a. In ARMv6-M all synchronous faults are handled as a HardFault and can be considered as escalated faults.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C.5 Memory model support

ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M share a common default memory map. ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M also support PMSAv6 and PMSAv7, respectively, as architecture options.

ARMv7-M supports a continuation model for the LDM and STM instructions using the ICI bits in the EPSR. ARMv6-M does not support the ICI bits. If the instruction is abandoned because of an interrupt, it restarts rather than continuing on return from the exception. For this reason, ARMv6-M does not support use of Device or Strongly-ordered memory with multi-word load or store instructions.

C.5.1 Alignment support

ARMv6-M only supports naturally aligned memory accesses for 16-bit halfword and 32-bit word accesses using the LDR, LDRH, LDRSH, STR and STRH instructions. ARMv7-M supports unaligned accesses from these instructions.

Note

ARMv7-M has additional 32-bit instructions, not supported in ARMv6-M, that provide unaligned accesses.

C.5.2 Endian support

A configurable endian model is supported by both ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M. For more information, see *Endian support* on page A3-44.

ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M only support instruction fetches in little endian format. Where a big endian instruction format is required, the bus fabric must provided byte swapping within a halfword. The byte swap is required for instruction fetches only and must not occur on data accesses.

For example, for instruction fetches over a 32-bit bus:

```
PrefetchInstr<31:24> -> PrefetchInstr<23:16>
PrefetchInstr<23:16> -> PrefetchInstr<31:24>
PrefetchInstr<15:8> -> PrefetchInstr<7:0>
PrefetchInstr<7:0> -> PrefetchInstr<15:8>
```

C.5.3 Exclusive access support

ARMv6-M does not support exclusive access instructions.

ARMv7-M supports the CLREX, LDREX, LDREXB, LDREXH, STREX, STREXB and STREXH instructions.

C.5.4 Cache support

ARMv6-M and ARMv7-M only support memory-mapped system caches.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C.5.5 PMSA support

ARMv6-M supports PMSAv6 as an architecture option, see *Protected Memory System Architecture, PMSAv6* on page B3-289.

If the PMSAv6 architecture option is not implemented, all associated Memory Protection Unit (MPU) registers are reserved.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C.6 System Control Space register support

Many registers or register fields present in ARMv7-M are reserved in ARMv6-M. Reserved fields relate to features not supported, or configurable features in ARMv7-M that are fixed in ARMv6-M.

C.6.1 Reserved registers in ARMv6-M

The following registers are defined in ARMv7-M and reserved in ARMv6-M:

- the System Control Register at address `0xE000ED10`
- the Configuration and Control Register at address `0xE000ED14`
- the System Handler Priority Register 1 at address `0xE000ED18`
- the CPU attribute ID region from address `0xE000ED40` to `0xE000ED7F`
- the Coprocessor Access Register at address `0xE000ED88`
- the Software Trigger Interrupt Register at address `0xE000EF00`
- the Configurable Fault Status Registers at address `0xE000ED28`
- the HardFault Status Register at address `0xE000ED2C`
- the MemManage Address Register at address `0xE000ED34`
- the BusFault Address Register at address `0xE000ED38`
- the Auxiliary Fault Status Register at address `0xE000ED3C`.

Note

In ARMv6-M, the STKALIGN and UNALIGN_TRP functions are permanently enabled. This corresponds to the associated control bits in the ARMv7-M Configuration and Control register being implicitly fixed at 1. Similarly, the AIRCR.PRIGROUP field is assumed to RAZ.

For ARMv6-M, the following functionality is fixed in hardware and has no programming interface:

- stack alignment support, see *Stack alignment on exception entry* on page B1-227
- unaligned access trapping, see *Alignment support* on page A3-43
- priority grouping, see *Priority grouping* on page B1-222.

CPU attribute ID registers

ARMv6-M does not support the CPU attribute ID registers.

C.6.2 General Fault Status Registers

ARMv6-M only supports fault status information as part of the Debug Extension, provided by the SHCSR and DFSR. All other fault status resources in ARMv7-M are reserved in ARMv6-M.

ARMv6-M uses HardFault for all fault conditions. The different fault categories offered by ARMv7-M, that is, MemManage, BusFault and UsageFault, are always escalated to HardFault in ARMv6-M. See *Priority escalation* on page B1-223 for details.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C.6.3 System timer support

ARMv7-M includes an architected system timer, SysTick. ARMv6-M supports a compatible timer as an optional feature.

C.6.4 NVIC support

ARMv6-M supports a compatible NVIC to that supported in ARMv7-M. The only differences are:

- ARMv6-M only supports up to 32 external interrupts. The Interrupt Controller Type register is reserved in ARMv6-M.
- ARMv6-M does not support an Active Bit Register, the register location is reserved.
- ARMv6-M supports fewer priority levels than ARMv7-M.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

C.7 Debug support

ARMv7-M supports the Debug Monitor exception, in addition to halting debug and the associated Debug state. ARMv6-M only supports halting debug, and only when the Debug Extension is present.

Debug resources in ARMv7-M are generally accessible from the processor or using the *Debug Access Port* (DAP). ARMv6-M requires only that debug resources are accessible using the DAP.

ARMv6-M offers a simpler set of debug features than ARMv7-M, with fewer options:

- Debug is only provided by the optional Debug Extension.
- Only halting debug is supported. ARMv6-M does not provide a Debug Monitor exception.
- ARMv6-M provides:
  - software breakpoint support using the `BKPT` instruction
  - hardware breakpoint support using a *Breakpoint Unit* (BPU)

  Note

  The BPU corresponds to the *Flash Patch and Breakpoint Unit* (FPB) in ARMv7-M.The name change reflects the reduced functionality.
- Watchpoint support provides data access address matching only. ARMv6-M does not support data value watchpoints.
- ARMv6-M provides an optional PC sampling register, PCSR. It does not provide any other cycle counter or DWT trace support.
- ARMv6-M does not support:
  - an *Instrumentation Trace Macrocell* (ITM)
  - an *Embedded Trace Macrocell* (ETM), or the associated *Trace Port Interface Unit* (TPIU).

C.7.1 Debug and reset in ARMv6-M

ARM recommends that implementations that include the Debug Extensions implement separate reset domains for Power-on reset and Local reset. However, the actual reset scheme is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. For more information see *Debug and reset* on page C1-323.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Appendix D
Legacy Instruction Mnemonics

This appendix describes the legacy mnemonics in the ARMv6-M Thumb instruction set and their UAL equivalents. It contains the following sections:

- *Thumb instruction mnemonics* on page AppxD-380
- *Pre-UAL pseudo-instruction NOP* on page AppxD-384.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

D.1 Thumb instruction mnemonics

The following table shows the pre-UAL assembly syntax used for Thumb instructions before the introduction of Thumb-2 technology and the equivalent UAL syntax for each instruction. It can be used to translate correctly-assembling pre-UAL Thumb assembler code into UAL assembler code.

This table is not intended to be used for the reverse translation from UAL assembler code to pre-UAL Thumb assembler code.

In this table, 3-operand forms of the equivalent UAL syntax are used, except in one case where a 2-operand form has to be used to ensure that the same instruction encoding is selected by a UAL assembler as was selected by a pre-UAL Thumb assembler.

Table D-1 Pre-UAL assembly syntax

Pre-UAL Thumb syntax	Equivalent UAL syntax	Notes
ADC <Rd>, <Rm>	ADCS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rm>	
ADD <Rd>, <Rn>, #<imm>	ADDS <Rd>, <Rn>, #<imm>	
ADD <Rd>, #<imm>	ADDS <Rd>, #<imm>	
ADD <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>	ADDS <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>	
ADD <Rd>, SP	ADD <Rd>, SP, <Rd>	
ADD <Rd>, <Rm>	ADDS <Rd>, <Rm> ADD <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rm>	If <Rd> and <Rm> are both R0-R7. Otherwise <Rm> is not SP.
ADD <Rd>, PC, #<imm> ADR <Rd>, <label>	ADD <Rd>, PC, #<imm> ADR <Rd>, <label>	ADR form preferred where possible.
ADD <Rd>, SP, #<imm>	ADD <Rd>, SP, #<imm>	
ADD SP, #<imm>	ADD SP, SP, #<imm>	
AND <Rd>, <Rm>	ANDS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rm>	
ASR <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm>	ASRS <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm>	
ASR <Rd>, <Rs>	ASRS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rs>	
B<cond> <label>	B<cond> <label>	
B <label>	B <label>	
BIC <Rd>, <Rm>	BICS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rm>	
BKPT <imm>	BKPT <imm>	
BL <label>	BL <label>	

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table D-1 Pre-UAL assembly syntax (continued)

Pre-UAL Thumb syntax	Equivalent UAL syntax	Notes
BLX <Rm>	BLX <Rm>	<Rm> can be a high register.
BX <Rm>	BX <Rm>	<Rm> can be a high register.
CMN <Rn>, <Rm>	CMN <Rn>, <Rm>	
CMP <Rn>, #<imm>	CMP <Rn>, #<imm>	
CMP <Rn>, <Rm>	CMP <Rn>, <Rm>	<Rd> and <Rm> can be high registers.
CPS<effect> <iflags>	CPS<effect> <iflags>	
CPY <Rd>, <Rm>	MOV <Rd>, <Rm>	
EOR <Rd>, <Rm>	EORS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rm>	
LDMIA <Rn>!, <registers>	LDMIA <Rn>, <registers> LDMIA <Rn>!, <registers>	If <Rn> listed in <registers>. Otherwise.
LDR <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	LDR <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	<Rn> can be SP.
LDR <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	LDR <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	
LDR <Rd>, [PC, #<imm>] LDR <Rd>, <label>	LDR <Rd>, [PC, #<imm>] LDR <Rd>, <label>	<label> form preferred where possible.
LDRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	LDRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	
LDRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	LDRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	
LDRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	LDRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	
LDRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	LDRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	
LDRSB <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	LDRSB <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	
LDRSH <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	LDRSH <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	
LSL <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm>	MOVS <Rd>, <Rm> LSLS <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm>	If <imm> == 0. Otherwise.
LSL <Rd>, <Rs>	LSLS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rs>	
LSR <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm>	LSRS <Rd>, <Rm>, #<imm>	
LSR <Rd>, <Rs>	LSRS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rs>	
MOV <Rd>, #<imm>	MOVS <Rd>, #<imm>	

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table D-1 Pre-UAL assembly syntax (continued)

Pre-UAL Thumb syntax	Equivalent UAL syntax	Notes
MOV <Rd>, <Rm>	ADDS <Rd>, <Rm>, #0 MOV <Rd>, <Rm>	If <Rd> and <Rm> are both R0-R7. Otherwise.
MUL <Rd>, <Rm>	MULS <Rd>, <Rm>, <Rd>	
MVN <Rd>, <Rm>	MVNS <Rd>, <Rm>	
NEG <Rd>, <Rm>	RSBS <Rd>, <Rm>, #0	
ORR <Rd>, <Rm>	ORRS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rm>	
POP <registers>	POP <registers>	<registers> can include PC.
PUSH <registers>	PUSH <registers>	<registers> can include LR.
REV <Rd>, <Rn>	REV <Rd>, <Rn	
REV16 <Rd>, <Rn>	REV16 <Rd>, <Rn>	
REVSH <Rd>, <Rn>	REVSH <Rd>, <Rn>	
ROR <Rd>, <Rs>	RORS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rs>	
SBC <Rd>, <Rm>	SBCS <Rd>, <Rd>, <Rm>	
STMIA <Rn>!, <registers>	STMIA <Rn>!, <registers>	
STR <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	STR <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	<Rn> can be SP.
STR <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	STR <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	
STRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	STRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	
STRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	STRB <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	
STRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	STRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, #<imm>]	
STRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	STRH <Rd>, [<Rn>, <Rm>]	
SUB <Rd>, <Rn>, #<imm>	SUBS <Rd>, <Rn>, #<imm>	
SUB <Rd>, #<imm>	SUBS <Rd>, #<imm>	
SUB <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>	SUBS <Rd>, <Rn>, <Rm>	
SUB SP, #<imm>	SUB SP, SP, #<imm>	
SWI <imm>	SVC <imm>	

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table D-1 Pre-UAL assembly syntax (continued)

Pre-UAL Thumb syntax	Equivalent UAL syntax	Notes
SXTB <Rd>, <Rm>	SXTB <Rd>, <Rm>	
SXTH <Rd>, <Rm>	SXTH <Rd>, <Rm>	
TST <Rn>, <Rm>	TST <Rn>, <Rm>	
UXTB <Rd>, <Rm>	UXTB <Rd>, <Rm>	
UXTH <Rd>, <Rm>	UXTH <Rd>, <Rm>	

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

D.2 Pre-UAL pseudo-instruction NOP

In pre-UAL assembler code, `NOP` is a pseudo-instruction, equivalent to `MOV R8,R8` in Thumb code.

Assembling the `NOP` mnemonic as UAL does not change the functionality of the code, but does change:

- the instruction encoding selected
- the architecture variants on which the resulting binary executes successfully, because the Thumb version of the `NOP` instruction was introduced in ARMv6T2.

To avoid the change in Thumb code, replace `NOP` in the assembler source code with `MOV R8,R8`, before assembling as UAL.

Note

The pre-UAL pseudo-instruction is different for ARM code where it is equivalent to `MOV R0,R0`.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Appendix E
Pseudocode Definition

This appendix provides a formal definition of the pseudocode used in this book, and lists those *helper* procedures and functions, used by pseudocode for architecture-specific tasks, that are not described elsewhere in this manual. It contains the following sections:

- *Instruction encoding diagrams and pseudocode* on page AppxE-386
- *Limitations of pseudocode* on page AppxE-388
- *Data types* on page AppxE-389
- *Expressions* on page AppxE-393
- *Operators and built-in functions* on page AppxE-395
- *Statements and program structure* on page AppxE-401
- *Miscellaneous helper procedures and functions* on page AppxE-406.

See *Pseudocode functions and procedures* on page AppxF-414 for an index to all of the pseudocode functions described in this manual.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

E.1 Instruction encoding diagrams and pseudocode

Instruction descriptions in this book contain:

- An Encoding section, containing one or more encoding diagrams, each followed by some encoding-specific pseudocode that translates the fields of the encoding into inputs for the common pseudocode of the instruction, and picks out any encoding-specific special cases.
- An Operation section, containing common pseudocode that applies to all of the encodings being described. The Operation section pseudocode contains a call to the `EncodingSpecificOperations()` function, either at its start or after only a condition check performed by `if ConditionPassed() then`.

An encoding diagram specifies each bit of the instruction as one of the following:

- An obligatory 0 or 1, represented in the diagram as 0 or 1. If this bit does not have this value, the encoding corresponds to a different instruction.
- A *should be* 0 or 1, represented in the diagram as (0) or (1). If this bit does not have this value, the instruction is UNPREDICTABLE.
- A named single bit or a bit within a named multi-bit field.

An encoding diagram matches an instruction if all obligatory bits are identical in the encoding diagram and the instruction.

The execution model for an instruction is:

1. Find all encoding diagrams that match the instruction. It is possible that no encoding diagrams match. In that case, abandon this execution model and consult the relevant instruction set chapter instead to find out how the instruction is to be treated. The bit pattern of such an instruction is usually reserved and UNDEFINED, though there are some other possibilities. For example, unallocated hint instructions are documented as being reserved and to be executed as NOPs.
2. If the operation pseudocode for the matching encoding diagrams starts with a condition check, perform that condition check. If the condition check fails, abandon this execution model and treat the instruction as a NOP. If there are multiple matching encoding diagrams, either all or none of their corresponding pieces of common pseudocode start with a condition check.
3. Perform the encoding-specific pseudocode for each of the matching encoding diagrams independently and in parallel. Each such piece of encoding-specific pseudocode starts with a bitstring variable for each named bit or multi-bit field within its corresponding encoding diagram, named the same as the bit or multi-bit field and initialized with the values of the corresponding bit or bits from the bit pattern of the instruction.

   In a few cases, the encoding diagram contains more than one bit or field with the same name. When this occurs, the values of all of those bits or fields are expected to be identical, and the encoding-specific pseudocode contains a special case using the `Consistent()` function to specify what happens if this is not the case. This function returns `TRUE` if all instruction bits or fields with the same name as its argument have the same value, and `FALSE` otherwise.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

If there are multiple matching encoding diagrams, all but one of the corresponding pieces of pseudocode must contain a special case that indicates that it does not apply. Discard the results of all such pieces of pseudocode and their corresponding encoding diagrams.

There is now one remaining piece of pseudocode and its corresponding encoding diagram left to consider. This pseudocode might also contain a special case, most commonly one indicating that it is UNPREDICTABLE. If so, abandon this execution model and treat the instruction according to the special case.

4. Check the *should be* bits of the encoding diagram against the corresponding bits of the bit pattern of the instruction. If any of them do not match, abandon this execution model and treat the instruction as UNPREDICTABLE.

5. Perform the rest of the operation pseudocode for the instruction description that contains the encoding diagram. That pseudocode starts with all variables set to the values they were left with by the encoding-specific pseudocode.

The `ConditionPassed()` call in the common pseudocode, if present, performs step 2, and the `EncodingSpecificOperations()` call performs steps 3 and 4.

E.1.1 Pseudocode

The pseudocode provides precise descriptions of what instructions do. Instruction fields are referred to by the names shown in the encoding diagram for the instruction.

The pseudocode is described in detail in the following sections.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

E.2 Limitations of pseudocode

The pseudocode descriptions of instruction functionality have a number of limitations. These are mainly because of the fact that, for clarity and brevity, the pseudocode is a sequential and mostly deterministic language.

These limitations include:

- Pseudocode does not describe the ordering requirements when an instruction generates multiple memory accesses. For a description of the ordering requirements on memory accesses see *Memory access order* on page A3-58.
- The pseudocode statements `UNDEFINED`, `UNPREDICTABLE` and `SEE` indicate behavior that differs from that indicated by the pseudocode being executed. If one of them is encountered:
  - — Earlier behavior indicated by the pseudocode is only specified as occurring to the extent required to determine that the statement is executed.
  - — No subsequent behavior indicated by the pseudocode occurs. This means that these statements terminate pseudocode execution.

  For more information see *Simple statements* on page AppxE-401.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

E.3 Data types

This section describes:

- *General data type rules*
- *Bitstrings*
- *Integers* on page AppxE-390
- *Reals* on page AppxE-390
- *Booleans* on page AppxE-390
- *Enumerations* on page AppxE-390
- *Lists* on page AppxE-391
- *Arrays* on page AppxE-392.

E.3.1 General data type rules

ARM Architecture pseudocode is a strongly-typed language. Every constant and variable is of one of the following types:

- bitstring
- integer
- boolean
- real
- enumeration
- list
- array.

The type of a constant is determined by its syntax. The type of a variable is normally determined by assignment to the variable, with the variable being implicitly declared to be of the same type as whatever is assigned to it. For example, the assignments `x = 1`, `y = '1'`, and `z = TRUE` implicitly declare the variables `x`, `y` and `z` to have types integer, length-1 bitstring and boolean respectively.

Variables can also have their types declared explicitly by preceding the variable name with the name of the type. This is most often done in function definitions for the arguments and the result of the function.

These data types are described in more detail in the following sections.

E.3.2 Bitstrings

A bitstring is a finite-length string of 0s and 1s. Each length of bitstring is a different type. The minimum permitted length of a bitstring is 1.

The type name for bitstrings of length `N` is `bits(N)`. A synonym of `bits(1)` is `bit`.

Bitstring constants are written as a single quotation mark, followed by the string of 0s and 1s, followed by another single quotation mark. For example, the two constants of type `bit` are `'0'` and `'1'`. Spaces can be included in the bitstring for clarity.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

A special form of bitstring constant with `'x'` bits is permitted in bitstring comparisons. See *Equality and non-equality testing* on page AppxE-395 for details.

Every bitstring value has a left-to-right order, with the bits being numbered in standard *little-endian* order. That is, the leftmost bit of a bitstring of length N is bit N-1 and its rightmost bit is bit 0. This order is used as the most-significant-to-least-significant bit order in conversions to and from integers. For bitstring constants and bitstrings derived from encoding diagrams, this order matches the way they are printed.

Bitstrings are the only concrete data type in pseudocode, in the sense that they correspond directly to the contents of registers, memory locations, and instructions. All of the remaining data types are abstract.

E.3.3 Integers

Pseudocode integers are unbounded in size and can be either positive or negative. That is, they are mathematical integers rather than what computer languages and architectures commonly call integers. Computer integers are represented in pseudocode as bitstrings of the appropriate length, associated with suitable functions to interpret those bitstrings as integers.

The type name for integers is `integer`.

Integer constants are normally written in decimal, such as `0`, `15`, `-1234`. They can also be written in C-style hexadecimal, such as `0x55` or `0x80000000`. Hexadecimal integer constants are treated as positive unless they have a preceding minus sign. For example, `0x80000000` is the integer $+2^{31}$. If -2^{31} has to be written in hexadecimal, it must be written as `-0x80000000`.

E.3.4 Reals

Pseudocode reals are unbounded in size and precision. That is, they are mathematical real numbers, not computer floating-point numbers. Computer floating-point numbers are represented in pseudocode as bitstrings of the appropriate length, associated with suitable functions to interpret those bitstrings as reals.

The type name for reals is `real`.

Real constants are written in decimal with a decimal point. This means `0` is an integer constant, but `0.0` is a real constant.

E.3.5 Booleans

A boolean is a logical true or false value.

The type name for booleans is `boolean`. This is not the same type as `bit`, a length-1 bitstring.

Boolean constants are `TRUE` and `FALSE`.

E.3.6 Enumerations

An enumeration is a defined set of symbolic constants, such as:

```
enumeration SRType (SRType_LSL, SRType_LSR, SRType_ASR, SRType_ROR, SRType_RRX);
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

An enumeration always contains at least one symbolic constant, and symbolic constants cannot be shared between enumerations.

Enumerations must be declared explicitly, though a variable of an enumeration type can be declared implicitly as usual by assigning one of the symbolic constants to it. By convention, each of the symbolic constants starts with the name of the enumeration followed by an underscore. The name of the enumeration is its type name, and the symbolic constants are its possible constants.

Note

Booleans are basically a pre-declared enumeration:

```
enumeration boolean {FALSE, TRUE};
```

that does not follow the normal naming convention and that has a special role in some pseudocode constructs, such as `if` statements.

E.3.7 Lists

A list is an ordered set of other data items, separated by commas and enclosed in parentheses, such as:

```
(bits(32) shifter_result, bit shifter_carry_out)
```

A list always contains at least one data item.

Lists are often used as the return type for a function that returns multiple results. For example, this particular list is the return type of the function `Shift_C()` that performs a standard ARM shift or rotation, when its first operand is of type `bits(32)`.

Some specific pseudocode operators use lists surrounded by other forms of bracketing than parentheses. These are:

- Bitstring extraction operators. These use lists of bit numbers or ranges of bit numbers surrounded by angle brackets <...>.
- Array indexing. This uses lists of array indexes surrounded by square brackets [...].
- Array-like function argument passing. This uses lists of function arguments surrounded by square brackets [...].

Each combination of data types in a list is a separate type, with type name given by listing the data types, that is, `(bits(32),bit)` in the previous example. The general principle that types can be declared by assignment extends to the types of the individual list items within a list. For example:

```
(shift_t, shift_n) = ('00', 0);
```

implicitly declares `shift_t`, `shift_n` and `(shift_t,shift_n)` to be of types `bits(2)`, `integer` and `(bits(2),integer)` respectively.

A list type can also be explicitly named, with explicitly named elements in the list. For example:

```
type ShiftSpec is (bits(2) shift, integer amount);
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

After this definition and the declaration:

```
ShiftSpec abc;
```

the elements of the resulting list can then be referred to as `abc.shift` and `abc.amount`. This sort of qualified naming of list elements is only permitted for variables that have been explicitly declared, not for those that have been declared by assignment only.

Explicitly naming a type does not alter what type it is. For example, after the definition of `ShiftSpec`, `ShiftSpec` and `(bits(2),integer)` are two different names for the same type, not the names of two different types. To avoid ambiguity in references to list elements, it is an error to declare a list variable multiple times using different names of its type or to qualify it with list element names not associated with the name by which it was declared.

An item in a list that is being assigned to can be written as `-` to indicate that the corresponding item of the assigned list value is discarded. For example:

```
(shifted, -) = LSL_C(operand, amount);
```

List constants are written as a list of constants of the appropriate types, like `('00', 0)` in this example.

E.3.8 Arrays

Pseudocode arrays are indexed by either enumerations or integer ranges. An integer range is represented by the lower inclusive end of the range, then `..`, then the upper inclusive end of the range. For example:

```
enumeration MemType {MemType_Normal, MemType_Device, MemType_StronglyOrdered};

array bits(32) _R[PhysReg];

array bits(8) _Memory[0..0xFFFFFFFF];
```

Arrays are always explicitly declared, and there is no notation for a constant array. Arrays always contain at least one element, because enumerations always contain at least one symbolic constant and integer ranges always contain at least one integer.

Arrays do not usually appear directly in pseudocode. The items that syntactically look like arrays in pseudocode are usually array-like functions such as `R[i]`, `MemU[address,size]` or `Element[i,type]`. These functions package up and abstract additional operations normally performed on accesses to the underlying arrays, such as register banking, memory protection, endian-dependent byte ordering, exclusive-access housekeeping and vector element processing.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

E.4 Expressions

This section describes:

- *General expression syntax*
- *Operators and functions - polymorphism and prototypes* on page AppxE-394
- *Precedence rules* on page AppxE-394.

E.4.1 General expression syntax

An expression is one of the following:

- a constant
- a variable, optionally preceded by a data type name to declare its type
- the word `UNKNOWN` preceded by a data type name to declare its type
- the result of applying a language-defined operator to other expressions
- the result of applying a function to other expressions.

Variable names normally consist of alphanumeric and underscore characters, starting with an alphabetic or underscore character.

Each register described in the text is to be regarded as declaring a correspondingly named bitstring variable, and that variable has the stated behavior of the register. For example, if a bit of a register is stated to Read-As-Zero and ignore writes, then the corresponding bit of its variable reads as 0 and ignore writes.

An expression like `bits(32) UNKNOWN` indicates that the result of the expression is a value of the given type, but the architecture does not specify what value it is and software must not rely on such values. The value produced must not constitute a security hole and must not be promoted as providing any useful information to software.

Note

This `UNKNOWN` state was described as an UNPREDICTABLE value in some earlier ARM architecture documentation. It is related to but not the same as `UNPREDICTABLE`, which says architectural behavior cannot be relied upon.

A subset of expressions are assignable. That is, they can be placed on the left-hand side of an assignment. This subset consists of:

- Variables
- The results of applying some operators to other expressions. The description of each language-defined operator that can generate an assignable expression specifies the circumstances under which it does so. For example, those circumstances might include one or more of the expressions the operator operates on themselves being assignable expressions.
- The results of applying array-like functions to other expressions. The description of an array-like function specifies the circumstances under which it can generate an assignable expression.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Every expression has a data type. This is determined by:

- For a constant, the syntax of the constant.
- For a variable, there are three possible sources for the type
  - — its optional preceding data type name
  - — a data type it was given earlier in the pseudocode by recursive application of this rule
  - — a data type it is being given by assignment, either by direct assignment to it, or by assignment to a list of which it is a member.

  It is a pseudocode error if none of these data type sources exists for a variable, or if more than one of them exists and they do not agree about the type.
- For a language-defined operator, the definition of the operator.
- For a function, the definition of the function.

E.4.2 Operators and functions - polymorphism and prototypes

Operators and functions in pseudocode can be polymorphic, producing different functionality when applied to different data types. Each of the resulting forms of an operator or function has a different prototype definition. For example, the operator + has forms that act on various combinations of integers, reals and bitstrings.

One particularly common form of polymorphism is between bitstrings of different lengths. This is represented by using, for example, `bits(N)`, `bits(M)`, in the prototype definition.

E.4.3 Precedence rules

The precedence rules for expressions are:

1. Constants, variables and function invocations are evaluated with higher priority than any operators using their results.
2. Expressions on integers follow the normal *exponentiation before multiply/divide before add/subtract* operator precedence rules, with sequences of multiply/divides or add/subtracts evaluated left-to-right.
3. Other expressions must be parenthesized to indicate operator precedence if ambiguity is possible, but does not have to be if all permissible precedence orders under the type rules necessarily lead to the same result. For example, if `i`, `j` and `k` are integer variables, `i > 0 && j > 0 && k > 0` is acceptable, but `i > 0 && j > 0 || k > 0` is not.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

E.5 Operators and built-in functions

This section describes:

- *Operations on generic types*
- *Operations on booleans*
- *Bitstring manipulation*
- *Arithmetic* on page AppxE-398.

E.5.1 Operations on generic types

The following operations are defined for all types.

Equality and non-equality testing

Any two values `x` and `y` of the same type can be tested for equality by the expression `x == y` and for non-equality by the expression `x != y`. In both cases, the result is of type `boolean`.

A special form of comparison with a bitstring constant that includes `'x'` bits in addition to `'0'` and `'1'` bits is permitted. The bits corresponding to the `'x'` bits are ignored in determining the result of the comparison. For example, if opcode is a 4-bit bitstring, `opcode == '1x0x'` is equivalent to `opcode<3> == '1' && opcode<1> == '0'`. This special form is also permitted in the implied equality comparisons in `when` parts of `case ... of ...` structures.

Conditional selection

If `x` and `y` are two values of the same type and `t` is a value of type `boolean`, then `if t then x else y` is an expression of the same type as `x` and `y` that produces `x` if `t` is `TRUE` and `y` if `t` is `FALSE`.

E.5.2 Operations on booleans

If `x` is a `boolean`, then `!x` is its logical inverse.

If `x` and `y` are booleans, then `x && y` is the result of ANDing them together. As in the C language, if `x` is `FALSE`, the result is determined to be `FALSE` without evaluating `y`.

If `x` and `y` are booleans, then `x || y` is the result of ORing them together. As in the C language, if `x` is `TRUE`, the result is determined to be `TRUE` without evaluating `y`.

If `x` and `y` are booleans, then `x ^ y` is the result of exclusive-ORing them together.

E.5.3 Bitstring manipulation

The following bitstring manipulation functions are defined:

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Bitstring length and top bit

If x is a bitstring, the bitstring length function Len(x) returns its length as an integer, and TopBit(x) is the leftmost bit of x (= x<Len(x)-1> using bitstring extraction.

Bitstring concatenation and replication

If x and y are bitstrings of lengths N and M respectively, then x:y is the bitstring of length N+M constructed by concatenating x and y in left-to-right order.

If x is a bitstring and n is an integer with n > 0, Replicate(x,n) is the bitstring of length n*Len(x) consisting of n copies of x concatenated together and:

- Zeros(n) = Replicate('0',n)
- Ones(n) = Replicate('1',n)

Bitstring extraction

The bitstring extraction operator extracts a bitstring from either another bitstring or an integer. Its syntax is x<integer_list>, where x is the integer or bitstring being extracted from, and <integer_list> is a list of integers enclosed in angle brackets rather than the usual parentheses. The length of the resulting bitstring is equal to the number of integers in <integer_list>.

In x<integer_list>, each of the integers in <integer_list> must be:

- >= 0
- < Len(x) if x is a bitstring.

The definition of x<integer_list> depends on whether integer_list contains more than one integer. If it does, x<i,j,k,...,n> is defined to be the concatenation:

x<i> : x<j> : x<k> : ... : x<n>

If integer_list consists of one integer i, x<i> is defined to be:

- if x is a bitstring, '0' if bit i of x is a zero and '1' if bit i of x is a one.
- if x is an integer, let y be the unique integer in the range 0 to 2^(i+1)-1 that is congruent to x modulo 2^(i+1). Then **x<i>** is '0' if y < 2^i and '1' if y >= 2^i.

Loosely, this second definition treats an integer as equivalent to a sufficiently long 2's complement representation of it as a bitstring.

In <integer_list>, the notation i:j with i >= j is shorthand for the integers in order from i down to j, both ends inclusive. For example, instr<31:28> is shorthand for instr<31,30,29,28>.

The expression x<integer_list> is assignable provided x is an assignable bitstring and no integer appears more than once in <integer_list>. In particular, x<i> is assignable if x is an assignable bitstring and 0 <= i < Len(x).

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Encoding diagrams for registers frequently show named bits or multi-bit fields. For example, the encoding diagram for the APSR shows its bit<31> as N. In such cases, the syntax APSR.N is used as a more readable synonym for APSR<31>.

Logical operations on bitstrings

If x is a bitstring, `NOT(x)` is the bitstring of the same length obtained by logically inverting every bit of x.

If x and y are bitstrings of the same length, `x AND y`, `x OR y`, and `x EOR y` are the bitstrings of that same length obtained by logically ANDing, ORing, and exclusive-ORing corresponding bits of x and y together.

Bitstring count

If x is a bitstring, `BitCount(x)` produces an integer result equal to the number of bits of x that are ones.

Testing a bitstring for being all zero or all ones

If x is a bitstring, `IsZero(x)` produces `TRUE` if all of the bits of x are zeros and `FALSE` if any of them are ones, and `IsZeroBit(x)` produces `'1'` if all of the bits of x are zeros and `'0'` if any of them are ones. `IsOnes(x)` and `IsOnesBit(x)` work in the corresponding way. So:

```
IsZero(x)    = (BitCount(x) == 0)

IsOnes(x)    = (BitCount(x) == Len(x))

IsZeroBit(x) = if IsZero(x) then '1' else '0'

IsOnesBit(x) = if IsOnes(x) then '1' else '0'
```

Lowest and highest set bits of a bitstring

If x is a bitstring, and `N = Len(x)`:

- `LowestSetBit(x)` is the minimum bit number of any of its bits that are ones. If all of its bits are zeros, `LowestSetBit(x) = N`.
- `HighestSetBit(x)` is the maximum bit number of any of its bits that are ones. If all of its bits are zeros, `HighestSetBit(x) = -1`.
- `CountLeadingZeroBits(x) = N - 1 - HighestSetBit(x)` is the number of zero bits at the left end of x, in the range 0 to N.
- `CountLeadingSignBits(x) = CountLeadingZeroBits(x<N-1:1> EOR x<N-2:0>)` is the number of copies of the sign bit of x at the left end of x, excluding the sign bit itself, and is in the range 0 to N-1.

Zero-extension and sign-extension of bitstrings

If x is a bitstring and i is an integer, then `ZeroExtend(x,i)` is x extended to a length of i bits, by adding sufficient zero bits to its left. That is, if `i == Len(x)`, then `ZeroExtend(x,i) = x`, and if `i > Len(x)`, then:

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
ZeroExtend(x,i) = Zeros(i-Len(x)) : x
```

If x is a bitstring and i is an integer, then SignExtend(x,i) is x extended to a length of i bits, by adding sufficient copies of its leftmost bit to its left. That is, if i == Len(x), then SignExtend(x,i) = x, and if i > Len(x), then:

```
SignExtend(x,i) = Replicate(TopBit(x), i-Len(x)) : x
```

It is a pseudocode error to use either ZeroExtend(x,i) or SignExtend(x,i) in a context where it is possible that i < Len(x).

Converting bitstrings to integers

If x is a bitstring, SInt(x) is the integer whose 2's complement representation is x:

```
// SInt()
// ======

integer SInt(bits(N) x)
    result = 0;
    for i = 0 to N-1
        if x<i> == '1' then result = result + 2^i;
    if x<N-1> == '1' then result = result - 2^N;
    return result;
```

UInt(x) is the integer whose unsigned representation is x:

```
// UInt()
// ======

integer UInt(bits(N) x)
    result = 0;
    for i = 0 to N-1
        if x<i> == '1' then result = result + 2^i;
    return result;
```

Int(x, unsigned) returns either SInt(x) or UInt(x) depending on the value of its second argument:

```
// Int()
// =====

integer Int(bits(N) x, boolean unsigned)
    result = if unsigned then UInt(x) else SInt(x);
    return result;
```

E.5.4 Arithmetic

Most pseudocode arithmetic is performed on integer or real values, with operands being obtained by conversions from bitstrings and results converted back to bitstrings afterwards. As these data types are the unbounded mathematical types, no issues arise about overflow or similar errors.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Unary plus, minus and absolute value

If x is an integer or real, then +x is x unchanged, -x is x with its sign reversed, and ABS(x) is the absolute value of x. All three are of the same type as x.

Addition and subtraction

If x and y are integers or reals, x+y and x-y are their sum and difference. Both are of type integer if x and y are both of type integer, and real otherwise.

Addition and subtraction are particularly common arithmetic operations in pseudocode, and so it is also convenient to have definitions of addition and subtraction acting directly on bitstring operands.

If x and y are bitstrings of the same length N = Len(x) = Len(y), then x+y and x-y are the least significant N bits of the results of converting them to integers and adding or subtracting them. Signed and unsigned conversions produce the same result:

```
x+y = (SInt(x) + SInt(y))<N-1:0>
    = (UInt(x) + UInt(y))<N-1:0>

x-y = (SInt(x) - SInt(y))<N-1:0>
    = (UInt(x) - UInt(y))<N-1:0>
```

If x is a bitstring of length N and y is an integer, x+y and x-y are the bitstrings of length N defined by x+y = x + y<N-1:0> and x-y = x - y<N-1:0>. Similarly, if x is an integer and y is a bitstring of length M, x+y and x-y are the bitstrings of length M defined by x+y = x<M-1:0> + y and x-y = x<M-1:0> - y.

Comparisons

If x and y are integers or reals, then x == y, x != y, x < y, x <= y, x > y, and x >= y are equal, not equal, less than, less than or equal, greater than, and greater than or equal comparisons between them, producing boolean results. In the case of == and !=, this extends the generic definition applying to any two values of the same type to also act between integers and reals.

Multiplication

If x and y are integers or reals, then x * y is the product of x and y, of type integer if both x and y are of type integer and otherwise of type real.

Division and modulo

If x and y are integers or reals, then x / y is the result of dividing x by y, and is always of type real.

If x and y are integers, then x DIV y and x MOD y are defined by:

```
x DIV y = RoundDown(x / y)
x MOD y = x - y * (x DIV y)
```

It is a pseudocode error to use any x / y, x MOD y, or x DIV y in any context where y can be zero.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Square Root

If x is an integer or a real, `Sqrt(x)` is its square root, and is always of type real.

Rounding and aligning

If x is a real:

- `RoundDown(x)` produces the largest integer `n` where `n <= x`.
- `RoundUp(x)` produces the smallest integer `n` where `n >= x`.
- `RoundTowardsZero(x)` produces `RoundDown(x)` if `x > 0.0`, `0 if x == 0.0`, and `RoundUp(x) if x < 0.0`.

If x and y are integers, `Align(x,y) = y * (x DIV y)` is an integer.

If x is a bitstring and y is an integer, `Align(x,y) = (Align(UInt(x),y))<Len(x)-1:0>` is a bitstring of the same length as x.

It is a pseudocode error to use either form of `Align(x,y)` in any context where y can be 0. In practice, `Align(x,y)` is only used with y a constant power of two, and the bitstring form used with `y = 2^n` has the effect of producing its argument with its n low-order bits forced to zero.

Scaling

If `n` is an integer, `2^n` is the result of raising `2` to the power `n` and is of type `real`.

If x and n are integers, then:

- `x << n = RoundDown(x * 2^n)`
- `x >> n = RoundDown(x * 2^(-n))`.

Maximum and minimum

If x and y are integers or reals, then `Max(x,y)` and `Min(x,y)` are their maximum and minimum respectively. Both are of type `integer` if both x and y are of type `integer` and of type `real` otherwise.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

E.6 Statements and program structure

This section describes the control statements used in the pseudocode.

E.6.1 Simple statements

The following simple statements must all be terminated with a semicolon, as shown.

Assignments

An assignment statement takes the form:

```
<assignable_expression> = <expression>;
```

Procedure calls

A procedure call takes the form:

```
<procedure_name>(<arguments>);
```

Return statements

A procedure return takes the form:

```
return;
```

and a function return takes the form:

```
return <expression>;
```

where `<expression>` is of the type the function prototype line declared.

UNDEFINED

The statement:

```
UNDEFINED;
```

indicates a special case that replaces the behavior defined by the current pseudocode, apart from behavior required to determine that the special case applies. The replacement behavior is that the Undefined Instruction exception is taken.

UNPREDICTABLE

The statement:

```
UNPREDICTABLE;
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

indicates a special case that replaces the behavior defined by the current pseudocode, apart from behavior required to determine that the special case applies. The replacement behavior is not architecturally defined and must not be relied on by software. It must not constitute a security hole or hang the system, and must not be promoted as providing any useful information to software.

SEE...

The statement:

```
SEE <reference>;
```

indicates a special case that replaces the behavior defined by the current pseudocode, apart from behavior required to determine that the special case applies. The replacement behavior is that nothing occurs as a result of the current pseudocode because some other piece of pseudocode defines the required behavior. The `<reference>` indicates where that other pseudocode can be found.

IMPLEMENTATION_DEFINED

The statement:

```
IMPLEMENTATION_DEFINED <text>;
```

indicates a special case that specifies that the behavior is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED. Following text can give more information.

SUBARCHITECTURE_DEFINED

The statement:

```
SUBARCHITECTURE_DEFINED <text>;
```

indicates a special case that specifies that the behavior is SUBARCHITECTURE DEFINED. Following text can give more information.

E.6.2 Compound statements

Indentation is normally used to indicate structure in compound statements. The statements contained in structures such as `if ... then ... else ...` or procedure and function definitions are indented more deeply than the statement itself, and their end is indicated by returning to the original indentation level or less.

Indentation is normally done by four spaces for each level.

if ... then ... else ...

A multi-line `if ... then ... else ...` structure takes the form:

```
if <boolean_expression> then
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
```


Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
    <statement n>
elsif <boolean_expression> then
    <statement a>
    <statement b>
    ...
    <statement z>
else
    <statement A>
    <statement B>
    ...
    <statement Z>
```

The `else` and its following statements are optional.

```
if <boolean_expression> then
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
elsif <boolean_expression> then
    <statement a>
    <statement b>
    ...
    <statement z>
else
    <statement A>
    <statement B>
    ...
    <statement Z>
```

The block of lines consisting of `elsif` and its indented statements is optional, and multiple such blocks can be used.

The block of lines consisting of `else` and its indented statements is optional.

Abbreviated one-line forms can be used when there are only simple statements in the `then` part and, if present, the `else` part, as follows:

```
if <boolean_expression> then <statement 1>

if <boolean_expression> then <statement 1> else <statement A>

if <boolean_expression> then <statement 1> <statement 2> else <statement A>
```

Note

In these forms, `<statement 1>`, `<statement 2>` and `<statement A>` must be terminated by semicolons. This and the fact that the `else` part is optional are differences from the `if ... then ... else ...` expression.

repeat ... until ...

A `repeat ... until ...` structure takes the form:

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

```
repeat
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
until <boolean_expression>;
```

while ... do

A `while ... do` structure takes the form:

```
while <boolean_expression> do
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
```

for ...

A `for ...` structure takes the form:

```
for <assignable_expression> = <integer_expr1> to <integer_expr2>
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
```

case ... of ...

A `case ... of ...` structure takes the form:

```
case <expression> of
    when <constant values>
        <statement 1>
        <statement 2>
        ...
        <statement n>
    ... more "when" groups ...
    otherwise
        <statement A>
        <statement B>
        ...
        <statement Z>
```

where `<constant values>` consists of one or more constant values of the same type as `<expression>`, separated by commas. Abbreviated one line forms of `when` and `otherwise` parts can be used when they contain only simple statements.

If `<expression>` has a bitstring type, `<constant values>` can also include bitstring constants containing `'x'` bits. See *Equality and non-equality testing* on page AppxE-395 for details.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Procedure and function definitions

A procedure definition takes the form:

```
<procedure name>(<argument prototypes>)
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
```

where the <argument prototypes> consists of zero or more argument definitions, separated by commas. Each argument definition consists of a type name followed by the name of the argument.

Note

This first prototype line is not terminated by a semicolon. This helps to distinguish it from a procedure call.

A function definition is similar, but also declares the return type of the function:

```
<return type> <function name>(<argument prototypes>)
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
```

An array-like function is similar, but with square brackets:

```
<return type> <function name>[<argument prototypes>]
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
```

An array-like function also usually has an assignment prototype:

```
<function name>[<argument prototypes>] = <value prototypes>
    <statement 1>
    <statement 2>
    ...
    <statement n>
```

E.6.3 Comments

Two styles of pseudocode comment exist:

- // starts a comment that is terminated by the end of the line.
- /* starts a comment that is terminated by */.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

E.7 Miscellaneous helper procedures and functions

The functions described in this section are not part of the pseudocode specification. They are *helper* procedures and functions used by pseudocode to perform useful architecture-specific jobs. Each has a brief description and a pseudocode prototype. Some have had a pseudocode definition added.

E.7.1 BigEndianReverse()

This function is used to reverse the bytes in a value where a big endian access is required.

E.7.2 BKPTInstrDebugEvent()

This procedure generates a debug event for a BKPT instruction.

E.7.3 BranchWritePC()

This procedure writes a value to the PC with the correct semantics for such writes by simple branches, that is, a change to the PC in all circumstances.

```
BranchWritePC(bits(32) value)
```

E.7.4 BXWritePC()

This procedure writes a value to the PC with the correct semantics for such writes by interworking instructions. That is, with `BX`-like interworking behavior in all circumstances.

```
BXWritePC(bits(32) value)
```

Note

The M profile only supports the Thumb execution state. An attempt to change the instruction execution state causes an exception.

E.7.5 CallSupervisor()

In the M profile, this procedure causes an SVCall exception.

E.7.6 ClearExclusiveByAddress()

Return a local monitor to its Open Access state where the address tag matches. It is IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED whether an associated global monitor is cleared.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

E.7.7 ConditionPassed()

This function performs the condition test for an instruction, based on:

- the two Thumb conditional branch encodings, encodings T1 andT3 of the B instruction
- the current values of the xPSR.IT[7:0] bits for other Thumb instructions.

```
boolean ConditionPassed()
```

E.7.8 DataMemoryBarrier()

This procedure produces a DMB.

```
DataMemoryBarrier(bits(4) option)
```

E.7.9 DataSynchronizationBarrier()

This procedure produces a DSB.

```
DataSynchronizationBarrier(bits(4) option)
```

E.7.10 EncodingSpecificOperations()

This procedure invokes the encoding-specific pseudocode for an instruction encoding and checks the *should be* bits of the encoding, as described in *Instruction encoding diagrams and pseudocode* on page AppxE-386.

E.7.11 Hint_SendEvent()

This procedure performs a *send event* hint.

E.7.12 Hint_Yield()

This procedure performs a *Yield* hint.

E.7.13 InstructionSynchronizationBarrier()

This procedure produces an ISB.

```
InstructionSynchronizationBarrier(bits(4) option)
```

E.7.14 ProcessorID()

Identifies the executing processor.

E.7.15 ResetSCSRegisters()

Resets the SCS and NVIC registers that have defined reset values to those values, and makes all other SCS and NVIC registers UNKNOWN.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

E.7.16 SCS_UpdateStatusRegs()

On taking an exception, updates the SCS registers before starting execution of the exception handler.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Appendix F
Pseudocode Index

This appendix provides an index to pseudocode operators and functions that occur elsewhere in the document. It contains the following sections:

- *Pseudocode operators and keywords* on page AppxF-410
- *Pseudocode functions and procedures* on page AppxF-414.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

F.1 Pseudocode operators and keywords

Table F-1 lists the pseudocode operators and keywords, and is an index to their descriptions:

Table F-1 Pseudocode operators and keywords

Operator	Meaning	See
-	Unary minus on integers or reals	*Unary plus, minus and absolute value* on page AppxE-399
-	Subtraction of integers, reals and bitstrings	*Addition and subtraction* on page AppxE-399
+	Unary plus on integers or reals	*Unary plus, minus and absolute value* on page AppxE-399
+	Addition of integers, reals and bitstrings	*Addition and subtraction* on page AppxE-399
(...)	Around arguments of procedure	*Procedure calls* on page AppxE-401, *Procedure and function definitions* on page AppxE-405
(...)	Around arguments of function	*General expression syntax* on page AppxE-393, *Procedure and function definitions* on page AppxE-405
.	Extract named member from a list	*Lists* on page AppxE-391
.	Extract named bit or field from a register	*Bitstring extraction* on page AppxE-396
!	Boolean NOT	*Operations on booleans* on page AppxE-395
!=	Compare for non-equality (any type)	*Equality and non-equality testing* on page AppxE-395
!=	Compare for non-equality (between integers and reals)	*Comparisons* on page AppxE-399
&&	Boolean AND	*Operations on booleans* on page AppxE-395
*	Multiplication of integers and reals	*Multiplication* on page AppxE-399
/	Division of integers and reals (real result)	*Division and modulo* on page AppxE-399
/*...*/	Comment delimiters	*Comments* on page AppxE-405

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table F-1 Pseudocode operators and keywords (continued)

Operator	Meaning	See
//	Introduces comment terminated by end of line	*Comments* on page AppxE-405
:	Bitstring concatenation	*Bitstring concatenation and replication* on page AppxE-396
:	Integer range in bitstring extraction operator	*Bitstring extraction* on page AppxE-396
[...]	Around array index	*Arrays* on page AppxE-392
[...]	Around arguments of array-like function	*General expression syntax* on page AppxE-393, *Procedure and function definitions* on page AppxE-405
^	Boolean exclusive-OR	*Operations on booleans* on page AppxE-395
||	Boolean OR	*Operations on booleans* on page AppxE-395
<	*Less than* comparison of integers and reals	*Comparisons* on page AppxE-399
<...>	Extraction of specified bits of bitstring or integer	*Bitstring extraction* on page AppxE-396
<<	Multiply integer by power of 2 (with rounding towards -infinity)	*Scaling* on page AppxE-400
<=	*Less than or equal* comparison of integers and reals	*Comparisons* on page AppxE-399
=	Assignment	*Assignments* on page AppxE-401
==	Compare for equality (any type)	*Equality and non-equality testing* on page AppxE-395
==	Compare for equality (between integers and reals)	*Comparisons* on page AppxE-399
>	*Greater than* comparison of integers and reals	*Comparisons* on page AppxE-399
>=	*Greater than or equal* comparison of integers and reals	*Comparisons* on page AppxE-399
>>	Divide integer by power of 2 (with rounding towards -infinity)	*Scaling* on page AppxE-400

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table F-1 Pseudocode operators and keywords (continued)

Operator	Meaning	See
`2^N`	Power of two (real result)	*Scaling* on page AppxE-400
`AND`	Bitwise AND of bitstrings	*Logical operations on bitstrings* on page AppxE-397
`array`	Keyword introducing array type definition	*Arrays* on page AppxE-392
`bit`	Bitstring type of length 1	*Bitstrings* on page AppxE-389
`bits(N)`	Bitstring type of length N	*Bitstrings* on page AppxE-389
`boolean`	Boolean type	*Booleans* on page AppxE-390
`case ... of ...`	Control structure	*case ... of ...* on page AppxE-404
`DIV`	Quotient from integer division	*Division and modulo* on page AppxE-399
`enumeration`	Keyword introducing enumeration type definition	*Enumerations* on page AppxE-390
`EOR`	Bitwise EOR of bitstrings	*Logical operations on bitstrings* on page AppxE-397
`FALSE`	Boolean constant	*Booleans* on page AppxE-390
`for ...`	Control structure	*for...* on page AppxE-404
`if ... then ... else ...`	Expression selecting between two values	*Conditional selection* on page AppxE-395
`if ... then ... else ...`	Control structure	*if ... then ... else ...* on page AppxE-402
`IMPLEMENTATION_DEFINED`	Describes IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED behavior	*IMPLEMENTATION_DEFINED* on page AppxE-402
`integer`	Unbounded integer type	*Integers* on page AppxE-390
`MOD`	Remainder from integer division	*Division and modulo* on page AppxE-399
`OR`	Bitwise OR of bitstrings	*Logical operations on bitstrings* on page AppxE-397
`otherwise`	Introduces default case in `case ... of ...` control structure	*case ... of ...* on page AppxE-404
`real`	Real number type	*Reals* on page AppxE-390

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table F-1 Pseudocode operators and keywords (continued)

Operator	Meaning	See
`repeat ... until ...`	Control structure	*repeat ... until ...* on page AppxE-403
`return`	Procedure or function return	*Return statements* on page AppxE-401
`SEE`	Points to other pseudocode to use instead	*SEE...* on page AppxE-402
`SUBARCHITECTURE_DEFINED`	Describes SUBARCHITECTURE DEFINED behavior	*SUBARCHITECTURE_DEFINED* on page AppxE-402
`TRUE`	Boolean constant	*Booleans* on page AppxE-390
`UNDEFINED`	Cause Undefined Instruction exception	*UNDEFINED* on page AppxE-401
`UNKNOWN`	Unspecified value	*General expression syntax* on page AppxE-393
`UNPREDICTABLE`	Unspecified behavior	*UNPREDICTABLE* on page AppxE-401
`when`	Introduces specific case in `case ... of ...` control structure	*case ... of ...* on page AppxE-404
`while ... do ...`	Control structure	*while ... do* on page AppxE-404

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

F.2 Pseudocode functions and procedures

Table F-2 lists the pseudocode functions and procedures used in this manual, and is an index to their descriptions:

Table F-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures

Function	Meaning	See
`_Mem[]`	Basic memory accesses.	*The _Mem[] function* on page B2-251
`Abs()`	Absolute value of an integer or real.	*Unary plus, minus and absolute value* on page AppxE-399
`AddWithCarry()`	Addition of bitstrings, with carry input and carry/overflow outputs.	*Pseudocode details of addition and subtraction* on page A2-35
`Align()`	Align integer or bitstring to multiple of an integer.	*Rounding and aligning* on page AppxE-400
`ALUWritePC()`	Write value to PC, with interworking for ARM only from ARMv7.	*Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations* on page A2-36
`ASR()`	Arithmetic shift right of a bitstring.	*Shift and rotate operations* on page A2-32
`ASR_C()`	Arithmetic shift right of a bitstring, with carry output.	*Shift and rotate operations* on page A2-32
`BigEndianReverse()`	Endian-reverse the bytes of a bitstring.	*Declarations and support functions* on page B2-247
`BitCount()`	Count number of ones in a bitstring.	*Bitstring count* on page AppxE-397
`BKPTInstrDebugEvent()`	Breakpoint instruction debug event.	*Debug event behavior* on page C1-324
`BLXWritePC()`	Interworking branch with Link and Exchange.	*ARM core registers* on page A2-36
`BranchTo()`	Continue execution at specified address.	*Pseudocode details for ARM core register access* on page B1-216
`BranchWritePC()`	Write value to PC, without interworking.	*Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations* on page A2-36
`BXWritePC()`	Write value to PC, with interworking.	
`CallSupervisor()`	Generate exception for SVC instruction.	*CallSupervisor()* on page AppxE-406
`CheckPermission()`	Memory system check of access permission.	*Access permission checking* on page B2-252

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table F-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`ClearEventRegister()`	Clear the Event Register of the current processor.	*Pseudocode details of the Wait For Event lock mechanism* on page B1-243
`ClearExclusiveByAddress()`	Clear global exclusive monitor records for an address range.	*ClearExclusiveByAddress()* on page AppxE-406
`ConditionPassed()`	Returns TRUE if the current instruction passes its condition check.	*Pseudocode details of conditional execution* on page A6-100
`Consistent()`	Test identically-named instruction bits or fields are identical.	*Instruction encoding diagrams and pseudocode* on page AppxE-386
`CountLeadingSignBits()`	Number of identical sign bits at left end of bitstring, excluding the leftmost bit itself.	*Lowest and highest set bits of a bitstring* on page AppxE-397
`CountLeadingZeroBits()`	Number of zeros at left end of bitstring.	
`CurrentCond()`	Returns condition for current instruction.	*Pseudocode details of conditional execution* on page A6-100
`CurrentModeIsPrivileged()`	Returns TRUE if current software execution is privileged.	*Pseudocode detail of processor operating mode* on page B1-207
`DataAddressMatch()`	DWT comparator data address matching.	*Data address matching* on page C1-343
`DataMemoryBarrier()`	Perform a DMB operation.	*DataMemoryBarrier()* on page AppxE-407
`DataSynchronizationBarrier()`	Perform a DSB operation.	*DataSynchronizationBarrier()* on page AppxE-407
`DecodeImmShift()`	Decode shift type and amount for an immediate shift.	*Shift operations* on page A6-101
`DecodeRegShift()`	Decode shift type for a register-controlled shift.	*Shift operations* on page A6-101
`DefaultMemoryAttributes()`	Determine memory attributes for an address in the default memory map.	*Definition and mapping of memory attributes and permissions* on page B2-248
`DefaultPermissions()`	Defines the default access permissions for a memory access.	
`DefaultTEXDecode()`	Determine memory attributes for a set of TEX[2:0], C, B bits.	*MPU pseudocode* on page B3-290

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table F-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`Edge()`	Edge detection for external interrupts.	*External interrupt input behavior* on page B3-282
`EncodingSpecificOperations()`	Invoke encoding-specific pseudocode.	*Instruction encoding diagrams and pseudocode* on page AppxE-386
`EventRegistered()`	Determine whether the Event Register of the current processor is set.	*Pseudocode details of the Wait For Event lock mechanism* on page B1-243
`ExceptionActiveBitCount()`	Return the number of bits set to 1 in the `ExceptionActive[*]` array.	*Exception return operation* on page B1-229
`ExceptionEntry()`	Exception entry behavior.	*Exception entry behavior* on page B1-224
`ExceptionIN()`	Determine exception entry status.	*External interrupt input behavior* on page B3-282
`ExceptionOUT()`	Determine exception return status.	*External interrupt input behavior* on page B3-282
`ExceptionReturn()`	Exception return behavior.	*Exception return behavior* on page B1-227
`ExceptionTaken()`	Part of `ExceptionEntry()` behavior.	*Exception entry behavior* on page B1-224
`ExecutionPriority()`	Return the execution priority of the current active handler or thread.	*Exception priorities and preemption* on page B1-221
`FindPriv()`	Determine access privilege.	*Declarations and support functions* on page B2-247
`HighestSetBit()`	Position of leftmost 1 in a bitstring.	*Lowest and highest set bits of a bitstring* on page AppxE-397
`Hint_SendEvent()`	Perform function of SEV hint instruction.	*Hint_SendEvent()* on page AppxE-407
`Hint_Yield()`	Perform function of YIELD hint instruction.	*Hint_Yield()* on page AppxE-407
`InITBlock()`	Return TRUE if current instruction is in an IT block. Always FALSE in ARMv6-M.	*Conditional execution* on page A6-99
`InterruptAssertion()`	Determine status of an external interrupt.	*External interrupt input behavior* on page B3-282

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table F-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`InstrAddressMatch()`	DWT comparator instruction address matching.	*Instruction address matching* on page C1-343
`InstructionSynchronizationBarrier()`	Perform an ISB operation.	*InstructionSynchronizationBarrier()* on page AppxE-407
`Int()`	Convert bitstring to integer in argument-specified fashion.	*Converting bitstrings to integers* on page AppxE-398
`IsAligned()`	Address alignment check.	*Declarations and support functions* on page B2-247
`IsOnes()`	Test for all-ones bitstring, Boolean result.	*Testing a bitstring for being all zero or all ones* on page AppxE-397
`IsOnesBit()`	Test for all-ones bitstring, bit result.	
`IsZero()`	Test for all-zeros bitstring, Boolean result.	*Testing a bitstring for being all zero or all ones* on page AppxE-397
`IsZeroBit()`	Test for all-zeros bitstring, bit result.	
`LastInITBlock()`	Return TRUE if current instruction is the last instruction in an IT block. Always FALSE in ARMv6-M.	*Conditional execution* on page A6-99
`LateArrival()`	Late arrival exception handling.	*Late-arriving exceptions* on page B1-232
`Len()`	Bitstring length.	*Bitstring length and top bit* on page AppxE-396
`LoadWritePC()`	Write value to PC, with interworking.	*Pseudocode details of ARM core register operations* on page A2-36
`LowestSetBit()`	Position of rightmost 1 in a bitstring.	*Lowest and highest set bits of a bitstring* on page AppxE-397
`LSL()`	Logical shift left of a bitstring.	*Shift and rotate operations* on page A2-32
`LSL_C()`	Logical shift left of a bitstring, with carry output.	
`LSR()`	Logical shift right of a bitstring.	
`LSR_C()`	Logical shift right of a bitstring, with carry output.	

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table F-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`Max()`	Maximum of integers or reals.	*Maximum and minimum* on page AppxE-400
`MemA[]`	Memory access that must be aligned, at current privilege level.	*The MemA[] and MemU[] functions* on page B2-251
`MemU[]`	Memory access without alignment requirement, at current privilege level.	*Memory accesses* on page B2-251
`Min()`	Minimum of integers or reals.	*Maximum and minimum* on page AppxE-400
`NOT()`	Bitwise inversion of a bitstring.	*Logical operations on bitstrings* on page AppxE-397
`Ones()`	All-ones bitstring.	*Bitstring concatenation and replication* on page AppxE-396
`ProcessorID()`	Return integer identifying the processor.	*ProcessorID()* on page AppxE-407
`PopStack()`	Stack restore sequence on an exception return.	*Exception return behavior* on page B1-227
`PushStack()`	Stack save sequence on exception entry.	*Exception entry behavior* on page B1-224
`R[]`	Access the main ARM core register bank.	*Pseudocode details for ARM core register access* on page B1-216
`Replicate()`	Bitstring replication.	*Bitstring concatenation and replication* on page AppxE-396
`ResetSCSRegisters()`	Resets SCS and NVIC registers.	*ResetSCSRegisters()* on page AppxE-407
`ReturnAddress()`	Return address stacked on exception entry.	*Exception entry behavior* on page B1-224
`ROR()`	Rotate right of a bitstring.	*Shift and rotate operations* on page A2-32
`ROR_C()`	Rotate right of a bitstring, with carry output.	
`RRX()`	Rotate right with extend of a bitstring.	
`RRX_C()`	Rotate right with extend of a bitstring, with carry output.	

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table F-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`SCS_UpdateStatusRegs()`	On taking an exception, updates the SCS registers.	*SCS_UpdateStatusRegs()* on page AppxE-408
`SendEvent()`	Create a WFE wakeup event.	*Pseudocode details of the Wait For Event lock mechanism* on page B1-243
`SetEventRegister()`	Set the Event Register of the current processor.	*Pseudocode details of the Wait For Event lock mechanism* on page B1-243
`Shift()`	Perform a specified shift by a specified amount on a bitstring.	*Shift operations* on page A6-101
`Shift_C()`	Perform a specified shift by a specified amount on a bitstring, with carry output.	
`SignExtend()`	Extend bitstring to left with copies of its leftmost bit.	*Zero-extension and sign-extension of bitstrings* on page AppxE-397
`SInt()`	Convert bitstring to signed integer.	*Converting bitstrings to integers* on page AppxE-398
`SleepOnExit()`	Sleep on exit.	*Power management* on page B1-240
`TailChain()`	Tail chaining exception behavior.	*Tail-chaining* on page B1-234
`TakeReset()`	Reset behavior.	*Reset behavior* on page B1-224
`TopBit()`	Leftmost bit of a bitstring.	*Bitstring length and top bit* on page AppxE-396
`UInt()`	Convert bitstring to unsigned integer.	*Converting bitstrings to integers* on page AppxE-398
`ValidateAddress()`	Validates the address used for a memory access.	*MPU pseudocode* on page B3-290
`WaitForEvent()`	Wait until `WFE` instruction completes.	*Pseudocode details of the Wait For Event lock mechanism* on page B1-243
`WaitForInterrupt()`	Wait until `WFI` instruction completes.	*Pseudocode details of Wait For Interrupt* on page B1-244

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Table F-2 Pseudocode functions and procedures (continued)

Function	Meaning	See
`WriteToRegField()`	Indicate a write of 1 to a specified field in a system control register.	*External interrupt input behavior* on page B3-282
`ZeroExtend()`	Extend bitstring to left with zero bits.	*Zero-extension and sign-extension of bitstrings* on page AppxE-397
`Zeros()`	All-zeros bitstring.	*Bitstring concatenation and replication* on page AppxE-396

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Appendix G
Register Index

This appendix provides an index to the descriptions of the ARM registers in the document. It lists both the ARM core registers and the memory mapped registers, and contains the following sections:

- *ARM core registers* on page AppxG-422
- *Memory mapped system registers* on page AppxG-423
- *Memory mapped debug registers* on page AppxG-424.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

G.1 ARM core registers

Table G-1 provides an index to the main descriptions of the ARM core registers defined in ARMv6-M.

Table G-1 ARM core register index

Register	Description, see
R0, R1, R2, R3, R4, R5, R6, R7, R8, R9, R10, R11, R12	*Registers* on page B1-211
SP_main, SP_process (R13, banked)	*The SP registers* on page B1-211
LR (R14)	*Registers* on page B1-211
PC (R15)	*Registers* on page B1-211
APSR[a]	*The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-212
IPSR[a]	*The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-212
EPSR[a, b]	*The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-212
PRIMASK	*The special-purpose mask register, PRIMASK* on page B1-214
CONTROL	*The special-purpose CONTROL register* on page B1-215

a. xPSR is the combined APSR, IPSR, and EPSR.
b. EPSR[24] is called the T-bit.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

G.2 Memory mapped system registers

Table G-2 provides an index to the main descriptions of the memory mapped system control registers defined in ARMv6-M. The registers are listed in the order they are described in this manual.

Table G-2 Memory-mapped control register index

Register	Description, see
CPUID	*CPUID Base Register* on page B3-264
ICSR	*Interrupt Control State Register, ICSR* on page B3-265
AIRCR	*Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register, AIRCR* on page B3-268
CCR	*Configuration and Control Register, CCR* on page B3-271
SHPR2	*System Handler Priority Register 2, SHPR2* on page B3-272
SHPR3	*System Handler Priority Register 3, SHPR3* on page B3-273
SHCSR	*System Handler Control and State Register, SHCSR* on page C1-329
SYST_CSR	*SysTick Control and Status Register, SYST_CSR* on page B3-277
SYST_RVR	*SysTick Reload Value Register, SYST_RVR* on page B3-278
SYST_CVR	*SysTick Current Value Register, SYST_CVR* on page B3-279
SYST_CALIB	*SysTick Calibration Value Register, SYST_CALIB* on page B3-280
NVIC_ISER	*Interrupt Set-Enable Register, NVIC_ISER* on page B3-284
NVIC_ICER	*Interrupt Clear Enable Register, NVIC_ICER* on page B3-285
NVIC_ISPR	*Interrupt Set-Pending Register, NVIC_ISPR* on page B3-286
NVIC_ICPR	*Interrupt Clear-Pending Register, NVIC_ICPR* on page B3-287
NVIC_IPRn	*Interrupt Priority Registers, NVIC_IPR0 - NVIC_IPR7* on page B3-288

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

G.3 Memory mapped debug registers

Table G-3 provides an index to the main descriptions of the memory mapped debug registers defined in the ARMv6-M Debug Extension. The registers are listed in the order they are described in this manual.

Table G-3 Memory-mapped debug register index

Register[a]	Description, see
DFSR	*Debug Fault Status Register, DFSR* on page C1-330
DHCSR	*Debug Halting Control and Status Register, DHCSR* on page C1-331
DCRSR	*Debug Core Register Selector Register, DCRSR* on page C1-335
DCRDR	*Debug Core Register Data Register, DCRDR* on page C1-337
DEMCR	*Debug Exception and Monitor Control Register, DEMCR on page C1-338*
DWT_CTRL	*Control register, DWT_CTRL* on page C1-346
DWT_PCSR	*Program Counter Sample Register, DWT_PCSR* on page C1-347
DWT_COMPx	*Comparator registers, DWT_COMPx* on page C1-347
DWT_MASKx	*Comparator Mask registers, DWT_MASKx* on page C1-348
DWT_FUNCTIONx	*Comparator Function registers, DWT_FUNCTIONx* on page C1-349
BP_CTRL	*Breakpoint Control register, BP_CTRL* on page C1-352
BP_COMPx	*Breakpoint Comparator registers, BP_COMPx* on page C1-354

a. In addition to the registers listed, the Debug Extension includes bits in the ICSR, see *Interrupt Control State Register, ICSR* on page B3-265.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Glossary

AAPCS
Procedure Call Standard for the ARM Architecture.

Addressing mode
Means a method for generating the memory address used by a load/store instruction.

Aligned Refers to data items stored in such a way that their address is divisible by the highest power of 2 that divides their size. Aligned halfwords, words and doublewords therefore have addresses that are divisible by 2, 4 and 8 respectively.

An aligned access is one where the address of the access is aligned to the size of an element of the access

APSR *See* Application Program Status Register.

Application Program Status Register
The register containing those bits that deliver status information about the results of instructions, the N, Z, C, and V bits of the xPSR. See *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-212.

Atomicity
Is a term that describes either single-copy atomicity or multi-copy atomicity. The forms of atomicity used in the ARM architecture are defined in *Atomicity in the ARM architecture* on page A3-49.

See also Multi-copy Atomicity, Single-copy atomicity.

Banked register
Is a register that has multiple instances, with the instance that is in use depending on the processor mode, security state, or other processor state.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Base register
Is a register specified by a load/store instruction that is used as the base value for the instruction's address calculation. Depending on the instruction and its addressing mode, an offset can be added to or subtracted from the base register value to form the virtual address that is sent to memory.

Base register write-back
Describes writing back a modified value to the base register used in an address calculation.

Big-endian memory
Means that:

- a byte or halfword at a word-aligned address is the most significant byte or halfword in the word at that address
- a byte at a halfword-aligned address is the most significant byte in the halfword at that address.

Blocking
Describes an operation that does not permit following instructions to be executed before the operation is completed.

A non-blocking operation can permit following instructions to be executed before the operation is completed, and in the event of encountering an exception do not signal an exception to the processor. This enables implementations to retire following instructions while the non-blocking operation is executing, without the requirement to retain precise processor state.

Branch prediction
Is where a processor chooses a future execution path to prefetch along (see Prefetching). For example, after a branch instruction, the processor can choose to prefetch either the instruction following the branch or the instruction at the branch target.

Breakpoint
Is a debug event triggered by the execution of a particular instruction, specified in terms of the address of the instruction and/or the state of the processor when the instruction is executed.

Byte Is an 8-bit data item.

Cache Is a block of high-speed memory locations whose addresses are changed automatically in response to which memory locations the processor is accessing, and whose purpose is to increase the average speed of a memory access.

Cache contention
Is when the number of frequently-used memory cache lines that use a particular cache set exceeds the set-associativity of the cache. In this case, main memory activity goes up and performance drops.

Cache hit
Is a memory access that can be processed at high speed because the data it addresses is already in the cache.

Cache line
Is the basic unit of storage in a cache. Its size is always a power of two (usually 4 or 8 words), and must be aligned to a suitable memory boundary. A *memory cache line* is a block of memory locations with the same size and alignment as a cache line. Memory cache lines are sometimes loosely called cache lines.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Cache miss
Is a memory access that cannot be processed at high speed because the data it addresses is not in the cache.

Callee-save registers
Are registers that a called procedure must preserve. To preserve a callee-save register, the called procedure would normally either not use the register at all, or store the register to the stack during procedure entry and re-load it from the stack during procedure exit.

Caller-save registers
Are registers that a called procedure does not have to preserve. If the calling procedure requires their values to be preserved, it must store and reload them itself.

Clear Relates to registers or register fields. Indicates the bit has a value of zero (or bit field all 0s), or is being written with zero or all 0s.

Conditional execution
Means that if the condition code flags indicate that the corresponding condition is true when the instruction starts executing, it executes normally. Otherwise, the instruction does nothing.

Configuration
Settings made on reset, or immediately after reset, and normally expected to remain static throughout program execution.

Context switch
Is the saving and restoring of computational state when switching between different threads or processes. In this manual, the term context switch is used to describe any situations where the context is switched by an operating system and might or might not include changes to the address space.

DCB Debug Control Block - a region within the System Control Space (see SCS) specifically assigned to register support of debug features.

Digital signal processing (DSP)
Refers to a variety of algorithms that are used to process signals that have been sampled and converted to digital form. Saturated arithmetic is often used in such algorithms.

Direct Memory Access
Is an operation that accesses main memory directly, without the processor performing any accesses to the data concerned.

Do-not-modify fields (DNM)
Means the value must not be altered by software. DNM fields read as UNKNOWN values, and can only be written with the same value read from the same field on the same processor.

Doubleword
Is a 64-bit data item. Doublewords are normally at least word-aligned in ARM systems.

Doubleword-aligned
Means that the address is divisible by 8.

DSP *See* Digital signal processing

DWT Data Watchpoint and Trace - part of the ARM debug architecture.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Endianness
Is an aspect of the system's memory mapping. See big-endian and little-endian.

EPSR *See* Execution Program Status Register.

ETM Embedded Trace Macrocell - part of the ARM debug architecture

Exception
Handles an event. For example, an exception could handle an external interrupt or an Undefined Instruction.

Exception vector
Is one of a number of fixed addresses in low memory, or in high memory if high vectors are configured.

Execution Program Status Register
The register that contains the execution state bits and is part of the xPSR. See *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-212.

Execution stream
The stream of instructions that would have been executed by sequential execution of the program.

Explicit access
A read from memory, or a write to memory, generated by a load or store instruction executed in the processor. Reads and writes generated by L1 DMA accesses or hardware translation table accesses are not explicit accesses.

Fault An exception caused by some form of system error.

General-purpose register
Is one of the 32-bit general-purpose integer registers, R0 to R15. Note that R15 holds the Program Counter, and there are often limitations on its use that do not apply to R0 to R14.

Halfword
Is a 16-bit data item. Halfwords are normally halfword-aligned in ARM systems.

Halfword-aligned
Means that the address is divisible by 2.

High registers
Are ARM core registers 8 to 15, that can be accessed by some Thumb instructions.

Immediate and offset fields
Are unsigned unless otherwise stated.

Immediate values
Are values that are encoded directly in the instruction and used as numeric data when the instruction is executed. Many ARM and Thumb instructions permit small numeric values to be encoded as immediate values in the instruction that operates on them.

IMP Is an abbreviation used in diagrams to indicate that the bit or bits concerned have IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED behavior.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

IMPLEMENTATION DEFINED
Means that the behavior is not architecturally defined, but should be defined and documented by individual implementations.

Index register
Is a register specified in some load/store instructions. The value of this register is used as an offset to be added to or subtracted from the base register value to form the address that is sent to memory. Some addressing modes optionally permit the index register value to be shifted before the addition or subtraction.

Inline literals
These are constant addresses and other data items held in the same area as the code itself. They are automatically generated by compilers, and can also appear in assembler code.

Interrupt Program Status Register
The register that provides status information on whether an application thread or exception handler is currently executing on the processor. If an exception handler is executing, the register provides information on the exception type. The register is part of the xPSR. See *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-212.

Interworking
Is a method of working that permits branches between ARM and Thumb code in architecture variants that support both execution states.

IPSR *See* Interrupt Program Status Register.

ITM Instrumentation Trace Macrocell - part of the ARM debug architecture

Little-endian memory
Means that:

- a byte or halfword at a word-aligned address is the least significant byte or halfword in the word at that address
- a byte at a halfword-aligned address is the least significant byte in the halfword at that address.

Load/Store architecture
Is an architecture where data-processing operations only operate on register contents, not directly on memory contents.

Long branch
Is the use of a load instruction to branch to anywhere in the 4GB address space.

Memory barrier
See *Memory barriers* on page A3-61.

Memory coherency
Is the problem of ensuring that when a memory location is read (either by a data read or an instruction fetch), the value actually obtained is always the value that was most recently written to the location. This can be difficult when there are multiple possible physical locations, such as main memory, a write buffer and/or cache(s).

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Memory hint
A memory hint instruction enables you to provide advance information to memory systems about future memory accesses, without actually loading or storing any data to or from the register file.

Memory-mapped I/O
Uses special memory addresses that supply I/O functions when they are loaded from or stored to.

Memory Protection Unit (MPU)
Is a hardware unit whose registers provide simple control of a limited number of protection regions in memory.

MPU *See* Memory Protection Unit.

NRZ Non-Return-to-Zero - physical layer signaling scheme used on asynchronous communication ports.

Multi-copy atomicity
Is the form of atomicity described in *Multi-copy atomicity* on page A3-50.

See also Atomicity, Single-copy atomicity.

Offset addressing
Means that the memory address is formed by adding or subtracting an offset to or from the base register value.

Physical address
Identifies a main memory location.

Post-indexed addressing
Means that the memory address is the base register value, but an offset is added to or subtracted from the base register value and the result is written back to the base register.

Prefetching
Is the process of fetching instructions from memory before the instructions that precede them have finished executing. Prefetching an instruction does not mean that the instruction has to be executed.

Pre-indexed addressing
Means that the memory address is formed in the same way as for offset addressing, but the memory address is also written back to the base register.

Privileged access
Memory systems typically check memory accesses from privileged modes against supervisor access permissions rather than the more restrictive user access permissions. The use of some instructions is also restricted to privileged modes.

Protection region
Is a memory region whose position, size, and other properties are defined by Memory Protection Unit registers.

Protection Unit
See Memory Protection Unit.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Pseudo-instruction
UAL assembler syntax that assembles to an instruction encoding that is expected to disassemble to a different assembler syntax, and is described in this manual under that other syntax. For example, `MOV <Rd>,<Rm>, LSL #<n>` is a pseudo-instruction that is expected to disassemble as `LSL <Rd>,<Rm>,#<n>`

PSR Program Status Register. *See* APSR, EPSR, IPSR and xPSR.

RAO *See* Read-As-One (RAO).

RAZ *See* Read-As-Zero (RAZ).

RAO/SBOP field
Read-As-One, Should-Be-One-or-Preserved on writes.

In any implementation, the bit must read as 1, or all 1s for a bit field, and writes to the field must be ignored.

Software can rely on the field reading as 1, or all 1s for a bitfield, but must use an SBOP policy to write to the field.

RAZ/SBZP field
Read-As-Zero, Should-Be-Zero-or-Preserved on writes.

In any implementation, the bit must read as 0, or all 0s for a bit field, and writes to the field must be ignored.

Software can rely on the field reading as zero, but must use an SBZP policy to write to the field.

Read-As-One (RAO)
In any implementation, the bit must read as 1, or all 1s for a bit field.

Read-As-Zero (RAZ)
In any implementation, the bit must read as 0, or all 0s for a bit field.

Read-Modify-Write fields (RMW)
Are read to a general-purpose register, the relevant fields updated in the register, and the register value written back.

Reserved
Unless otherwise stated:

- instructions that are reserved or that access reserved registers have UNPREDICTABLE behavior
- bit positions described as Reserved are UNK/SBZP.

Return Link
a value relating to the return address

R/W1C register bits marked R/W1C can be read normally and support write-one-to-clear. A read then write of the result back to the register clears all bits set. R/W1C protects against read-modify-write errors occurring on bits set between reading the register and writing the value back. Because they are written as zero, they are not cleared.

RAZ/WI Read-As-Zero, Writes Ignored.

In any implementation, the bit must read as 0, or all 0s for a bit field, and writes to the field must be ignored.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Software can rely on the bit reading as 0, or all 0s for a bit field, and on writes being ignored.

RO Read only register or register field. RO bits are ignored on write accesses.

RISC Reduced Instruction Set Computer.

RMW *See* Read-Modify-Write fields.

Saturated arithmetic
Is integer arithmetic in which a result that would be greater than the largest representable number is set to the largest representable number, and a result that would be less than the smallest representable number is set to the smallest representable number. Signed saturated arithmetic is often used in DSP algorithms. It contrasts with the normal signed integer arithmetic used in ARM processors, in which overflowing results wrap around from $+2^{31}–1$ to $–2^{31}$, or from $–2^{31}$. to $+2^{31}–1$.

SBO *See* Should-Be-One fields.

SBOP *See* Should-Be-One-or-Preserved fields.

SBZ *See* Should-Be-Zero fields.

SBZP *See* Should-Be-Zero-or-Preserved fields.

SCB System Control Block - an address region within the System Control Space used for key feature control and configuration associated with the exception model.

SCS System Control Space - a 4kB region of the memory map reserved for system control and configuration.

Security hole
Is a mechanism that bypasses system protection.

Set Relates to registers or register fields. Indicates the bit has a value of 1 (or bit field all 1s), or is being written with 1 or all 1s, unless explicitly stated otherwise.

Self-modifying code
Is code that writes one or more instructions to memory and then executes them. This type of code cannot be relied on without the use of barrier instructions to ensure synchronization.

Should-Be-One fields (SBO)
Should be written as 1 (or all 1s for a bit field) by software. Values other than 1 produce UNPREDICTABLE results.

Should-Be-One-or-Preserved fields (SBOP)
Should be written as 1 (or all 1s for a bit field) by software if the value is being written without having been previously read, or if the register has not been initialized. Where the register was previously read, the value in the field should be preserved by writing the same value that has been previously read from the same field on the same processor.

Hardware must ignore writes to these fields.

If a value is written to the field that is neither 1 (or all 1s for a bit field), nor a value previously read for the same field on the same processor, the result is UNPREDICTABLE.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Should-Be-Zero fields (SBZ)
Should be written as 0 (or all 0s for a bit field) by software. Values other than 0 produce UNPREDICTABLE results.

Should-Be-Zero-or-Preserved fields (SBZP)
Should be written as 0 (or all 0s for a bit field) by software if the value is being written without having been previously read, or if the register has not been initialized. Where the register was previously read, the value in the field should be preserved by writing the same value that has been previously read from the same field on the same processor.

Hardware must ignore writes to these fields.

If a value is written to the field that is neither 0 (or all 0s for a bit field), nor a value previously read for the same field on the same processor, the result is UNPREDICTABLE.

Signed data types
Represent an integer in the range -2^{N-1} to $+2^{N-1}-1$, using two's complement format.

Signed immediate and offset fields
Are encoded in two's complement notation unless otherwise stated.

Simple sequential execution
The behavior of an implementation that fetches, decodes and completely executes each instruction before proceeding to the next instruction. Such an implementation performs no speculative accesses to memory, including to instruction memory. The implementation does not pipeline any phase of execution. In practice, this is the theoretical execution model that the architecture is based on, and ARM does not expect this model to correspond to a realistic implementation of the architecture.

Single-copy atomicity
Is the form of atomicity described in *Single-copy atomicity* on page A3-49.

See also Atomicity, Multi-copy atomicity.

Spatial locality
Is the observed effect that after a program has accessed a memory location, it is likely to also access nearby memory locations in the near future. Caches with multi-word cache lines exploit this effect to improve performance.

SUBARCHITECTURE DEFINED
Means that the behavior is expected to be specified by a subarchitecture definition. Typically, this is shared by multiple implementations, but it must only be relied on by specified types of code. This minimizes the software changes required when a new subarchitecture has to be developed.

SVC Is a supervisor call.

SWI Is a former term for SVC.

Status registers
See APSR, EPSR, IPSR and xPSR.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Temporal locality
Is the observed effect that after a program has accesses a memory location, it is likely to access the same memory location again in the near future. Caches exploit this effect to improve performance.

Thumb instruction
Is one or two halfwords that specify an operation for a processor in Thumb state to perform. Thumb instructions must be halfword-aligned.

TPIU Trace Port Interface Unit - part of the ARM debug architecture

UAL *See* Unified Assembler Language.

Unaligned
An unaligned access is an access where the address of the access is not aligned to the size of an element of the access.

Unaligned memory accesses
Are memory accesses that are not, or might not be, appropriately halfword-aligned, word-aligned, or doubleword-aligned.

Unallocated
Except where otherwise stated, an instruction encoding is unallocated if the architecture does not assign a specific function to the entire bit pattern of the instruction, but instead describes it as UNDEFINED, UNPREDICTABLE, or an unallocated hint instruction.

A bit in a register is unallocated if the architecture does not assign a function to that bit.

UNDEFINED
Indicates an instruction that generates an Undefined Instruction exception.

Unified Assembler Language
The assembler language introduced with Thumb-2 technology and used in this document. See *Unified Assembler Language* on page A4-68 for details.

Unified cache
Is a cache used for both processing instruction fetches and processing data loads and stores.

Unindexed addressing
Means addressing in which the base register value is used directly as the address to send to memory, without adding or subtracting an offset. In most types of load/store instruction, unindexed addressing is performed by using offset addressing with an immediate offset of 0.

UNKNOWN
An UNKNOWN value does not contain valid data, and can vary from moment to moment, instruction to instruction, and implementation to implementation. An UNKNOWN value must not be a security hole. UNKNOWN values must not be documented or promoted as having a defined value or effect.

UNK/SBOP field
UNKNOWN on reads, Should-Be-One-or-Preserved on writes.

In any implementation, the bit must read as 1 (or all 1s for a bit field), and writes to the field must be ignored.

Software must not rely on the field reading as 1 (or all 1s), and must use an SBOP policy to write to the field.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

UNK/SBZP field
UNKNOWN on reads, Should-Be-Zero-or-Preserved on writes.

In any implementation, the bit must read as 0 (or all 0s for a bit field), and writes to the field must be ignored.

Software must not rely on the field reading as zero, and must use an SBZP policy to write to the field.

UNK field
Contains an UNKNOWN value.

UNPREDICTABLE
Means the behavior cannot be relied on. UNPREDICTABLE behavior must not represent a security hole. UNPREDICTABLE behavior must not hang the processor, or any parts of the system. UNPREDICTABLE behavior must not be documented or promoted as having a defined effect.

Unsigned data types
Represent a non-negative integer in the range 0 to $+2^N-1$, using normal binary format.

Watchpoint
Is a debug event triggered by an access to memory, specified in terms of the address of the location in memory being accessed.

Word Is a 32-bit data item. Words are normally word-aligned in ARM systems.

WO Write only register or register field. WO bits are UNKNOWN on read accesses.

Word-aligned
Means that the address is divisible by 4.

Write buffer
Is a block of high-speed memory whose purpose is to optimize stores to main memory.

xPSR Is the term used to describe the combination of the APSR, EPSR and IPSR into a single 32-bit Program Status Register. See *The special-purpose program status registers, xPSR* on page B1-212.

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential

Copyright © 2007-2008, 2010 ARM Limited. All rights reserved.
Non-Confidential